

# **THE TEACHINGS OF THE BUDDHA**

## **(Basic Level)**

**MINISTRY OF RELIGIOUS AFFAIRS**

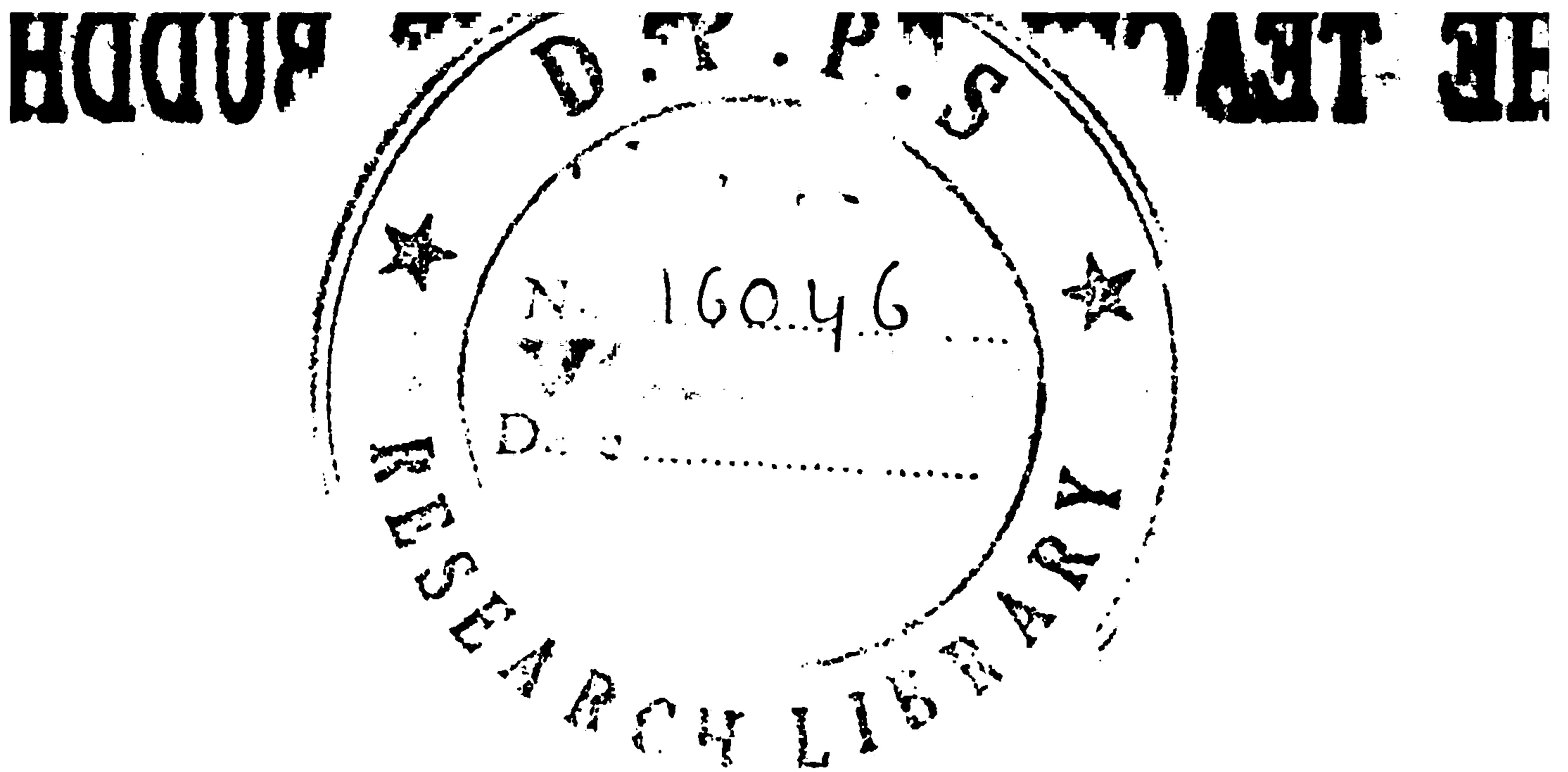
**KABA-AYE, YANGON, MYANMAR**

**S.E 2541**

**M.E 1359**

**A.D 1997**





Printed and Published by U Nyunt Maung  
Deputy Director, Regd: No.02405/02527  
at the Religious Affairs Dept. Press,  
Ministry of Religious Affairs.  
YANGON, MYANMAR.

# The Teachings of the Buddha

## CONTENTS

Introduction

Chapter (1) The Daily Routine  
of a Buddhist 1

Chapter (2) The Life of Buddha in Brief 5  
The Prediction of the Buddha  
Dīpaṅkarā 5  
The Fulfilment of the Perfec-  
tions 9  
The Life of Prince Siddhattha 24  
Attainment of Buddhahood 39  
The Buddha's Daily Routine 82  
The Buddha's Journey Before  
the Mahā-parinibbāna 94  
The Buddha's Mahā-parinib-  
bāna 112

Chapter (3) Paying Homage 117  
How to Pay Homage 117  
The Formula of Asking for  
Permission 120  
Moral Precepts 130  
The Attributes of Triple  
Gems 171

## The Teachings of the Buddha

Belief in Kamma and its Results	184
Good Conduct and Evil Conduct	188
Cultivating Loving-kindness	191
Making a solemn Wish and Sharing Merits	199
Chapter (4) Dispensing Charity	203
Offering Alms-food, Water, Flowers, Fragrance and Lights.	206
Stories Showing the Benefits of Charity	208
Virtuous Person's Charity	213
Chapter (5) Performance for the Perpetuation and Propagation of Buddhist Sāsanā	219
The Brief History of the Great Councils	219
Missionary Works	227
Religious Activities at Home	240

## **The Teachings of the Buddha**

<b>Chapter (6)</b>	<b>Social Duties</b>	<b>251</b>
	The Duties as shown in Siṅgālovāda Sutta	251
	Thirty-eight Kinds of Bless- ings	258
	The Causes of Downfall according to Parābhava Sutta	271
	The Causes of Becoming a Wretch according to Vasala Sutta	274
<b>Chapter (7)</b>	<b>Basic Abhidhamma</b>	<b>281</b>
	The Definition of Citta	281
	The Definition of Cetasika	286
	Twenty-eight Kinds of Matter	296
	Extinction of Craving (Nib- bānā)	301
<b>Chapter (8)</b>	<b>Moral Culture</b>	<b>302</b>
	Polite Manners	302
	Verbal Politeness	306
	Mental Politeness	307
<b>Chapter (9)</b>	<b>The Pāli Alphabet in Myanmar and Roman Characters</b>	<b>309</b>

Namo tassa Bhagavato Arahato  
Sammāsambuddhassa.

# **The Teachings of the Buddha (Basic Level)**

## **INTRODUCTION**

### ***Myanmar Naing Ngan and Theravāda Buddhism***

Since over one thousand years ago, the people of Myanmar have taken refuge in pure Theravāda Buddhism with firm confidence and conviction. The Theravāda Buddhism leads everyone to carry out his welfare and prosperity freely based on his own Kamma, wisdom and effort. On the other hand, it reminds and prohibits everyone to avoid evil conduct and evil speech which can cause harm to the human society. Moreover everyone must dutifully perform his duties related to the society, to the State and to the nation, including oneself, one's family and one's relatives.

The people of ancient Myanmar learned the basic education with respect to writing, reading and arithmetics and also the Buddha's teachings at monastic schools and proceeded in the journey of their life; they were not separated from the Buddha's Teachings, and so, they were able to lead their life to peaceful and prosperous goal. For this reason, Myanmar has existed under self-rule peacefully for many years.

### ***The Decline of Buddhism***

In 1885, Myanmar lost her independence and took a down-turn in her destiny. She remained under the colonial rule for about a hundred years. During this period the Theravāda Buddhism in Myanmar was on the decline as it lacked the support of the State, and the colonial government encouraged the spread of western culture and western religions.

### ***Building a Modern Nation and Buddhism***

The Union of Myanmar regained her independence and became a sovereign State again in 1948, just after World War II. Since that time, the authorities concerned made every endeavour to upgrade and promote Myanmar

culture and religion which has been on the decline under the colonial rule. However their effort was not successful as it should be, because of the long destructive civil war and the change in the education system from monastic education to modern education.

Now the Government of Myanmar is trying to build a modern, prosperous and peaceful nation with great effort, and it realizes the importance of Buddhism in the nation-building. If the people abide by the teachings of the Buddha and give a helping hand in the nation-building, the objectives of rebuilding the country will be accomplished smoothly and rapidly.

### ***Books on the Teachings of the Buddha***

Accordingly the Ministry of Religious Affairs of the Union of Myanmar effectively supports the activities for propagation of Buddha's teachings throughout Myanmar. Especially the Ministry encourages the dissemination of Buddhism in hilly regions and border areas in which Buddhism could not flourish in the past. Moreover the monastic education system that had faded away during the colonial period has been reintroduced into the country.



Besides the Ministry of Religious Affairs has appointed some learned persons as advisers to the Ministry and requested them to write "Books on the Teachings of the Buddha" which can be studied easily by young people as well as adults. Since 1996, classes on the Buddha's teachings have been conducted throughout the country during the summer vacation, and in these classes, the Book on the Buddha's Teachings have been prescribed as text-books.

### ***The Teachings of the Buddha (Basic Level)***

The books on the teachings of the Buddha comprise three volumes:

- (1) The Teachings of the Buddha (Basic Level),
- (2) The Teachings of the Buddha (Higher Level),
- (3) The Teachings of the Buddha (Advanced Level).

The first volume includes the life of the Buddha in brief, the attributes of the Triple Gems, the daily routine of a Buddhist such as paying homage to the Buddha, radiating loving-kindness, giving charity, sharing merit, etc.



Moreover, morality, kamma and its results, good conduct and evil conducts and basic Abhidhamma are also prescribed in this volume. Especially, important social duties and moral cultures are emphatically mentioned in this volume for the youths who are not in touch with the Teachings of the Buddha for various reasons.

Therefore, if the youths thoroughly study this book, they will realize the essence of Buddhism and become good citizens who display a good moral conduct, who love and cherish their mother-land, their nation and their culture. Only such good citizens will be able to repulse decadent cultures that have infiltrated into the country from other lands. So long as Buddhism flourishes in the country, the Union of Myanmar will be peaceful and rapidly develop in every respect.

### ***Translating into English***

Nowadays, many foreigners from all over the world are coming to Myanmar and among them there are some enthusiasts who are interested in Theravāda Buddhism and Myanmar culture. There are also some foreign scholars who would like to study true aspects of Theravāda Buddhism and Myanmar Culture.

To enable these enthusiasts and scholars to study the true aspects of Theravāda Buddhism and Myanmar culture in accord with the Myanmar tradition, "The Teachings of the Buddha (Basic level)" has now been translated into English by the Advisers of the Ministry of Religious Affairs with the help of translation officers from **the Department for the Promotion and Propagation of the Sāsana.**

The translation officers of D.P.P.S who offer their services in the translation work are:

- (1) U Aung Thein Nyunt
- (2) U Ko Ko Myaing
- (3) Daw Yi Yi Myint
- (4) Daw Wah Wah Swe
- (5) Daw Sandar Tun

We also have to record a special debt of gratitude to "Thar-Htun-Pyant" computer group and the scholars of D.P.P.S who rendered their proof-reading services.

7th April, 1997

Advisers

Ministry of Religious Affairs

# CHAPTER (1)

## The Daily Routine of a Buddhist

A Buddhist should be diligent to strive for daily religious tasks as compulsory duty. If we examine the term "Buddhist" in detail, we find as follows: The term "Buddha" means the supremely Self-Enlightened One through realization of the Four Noble Truths at the foot of the Bodhi-tree as he had fulfilled such perfections as dāna, sīla, etc., in his many births of saṃsāra.

Buddhism is the teachings delivered by Buddha in 45 years of Buddhahood for the benefit of all beings -- men, devas and Brahma. "A Buddhist is one who takes refuge in the Buddha, in the Dhamma, in the Saṃhga, and practises according to the teachings of the Buddha."

A Buddhist should not be a Buddhist for name sake only. He must practically abide

by the Teachings of the Buddha; only then will he be a real Buddhist. It is very hard indeed to attain the life of a human being. Meritorious deeds such as charity, morality and meditation can be performed only in the human life. In the four miserable realms, these meritorious deeds cannot be performed, because beings there have to suffer miseries all the time. Also in the realms of devas and brahmas, it is not easy to do meritorious deeds, because they are intoxicated with sensual pleasures of jhāna bliss. Human life is mingled with sensual pleasure and miseries, and so only a human being can strive for his deliverance from the whirlpool of miseries called Saṃsāra. Now we have the golden chance to be born as human beings and to study, practise, and realise the teachings of the Buddha. So we should earnestly strive for becoming a real Buddhist.

On becoming a real Buddhist, one must perform the following religious tasks daily with conviction and wisdom:-

- (a) Paying homage to the Buddha,
- (b) Observing the moral precepts,
- (c) Doing the act of charity,
- (d) Cultivating loving-kindness,

- (e) Striving for perpetuation and propagation of Buddha's Teachings,
- (f) Practising mindfulness on tranquility and insight meditation,
- (g) Sharing merit.

***Paying homage to the Buddha*** means reflecting on and reciting the virtues of the Triple Gem--the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha, and paying respect to them with five kinds of bodily contact. (Pañcapatiṭṭhita)

***Observing the moral precepts*** means to observe the five or eight precepts prescribed for laymen to lead a good moral life.

***Doing the act of charity*** means to offer something to the Buddha or other donees with righteous volition. Offering alms-food, pure water, flowers, perfumes, joss-sticks and light to the Buddha and the members of the Saṃgha are included in this charitable deed.

***Cultivating loving-kindness*** means developing or sending loving-kindness, *Mettā* towards all living beings.



***Striving for the perpetuation and propagation of Buddha's teachings*** means to make oneself and others firmly believe in the the teachings of the Buddha that enable one to avoid demeritorious actions and to perform meritorious deeds. Participating in religious associations, supporting the Pariyatti--sāsanā and Paṭtipatti-sāsanā, donation and distribution of books on Buddhism, teaching and discussing Buddhism among family members, neighbours and local people are included in this noble task.

***Practising mindfulness on tranquility and insight meditation*** means to overcome the real nature of personality-belief and to see mind and matter in oneself and to contemplate on their nature of impermanence, suffering and no-soul.

***Sharing merits*** means to share the meritorious deeds of charity, morality and meditation by saying "May all living beings gain the benefit of merit equally with me."



# CHAPTER (2)

## The Life of Buddha in Brief

### *The Prophecy of the Buddha Dīpaṅkarā*

Lord Buddha, the Sakyan Prince, the real refuge of all men, devas and brahmas, had fulfilled the ten perfections (Pāramī) since the life of Sumedhā. Four Asaṅkhyeyyas and one hundred-thousand world-cycles ago, the future Buddha named Sumedhā was the only son of a rich man at Amaravatī, the Royal City. He came of rich parental lineage, both of whom were pure in morality and race.

### *Sumedhā's View on Life*

The young man Sumedhā became an educated one when he reached the age of sixteen. His parents died since he was young. All of his wealth were guarded by his personal treasurer (financier). As he had come of age, the personal treasurer handed over all his wealth to him together with the lists of various things. When he saw his properties, he thought to

himself: "My parents, my grandparents and my great grandparents were only able to make great earnings and save them, but were unable to take them along with them. As for me, I shall take all the wealth along with me."

At that moment a deep outlook on life arose in him: "If there is heat, there must be cold; in the same way, if there is death, there must be deathlessness."

Then he opened his treasure-houses and gave all his possessions away. Afterwards he went forth to Himavantā and made himself an ascetic. Within seven days, he attained the supreme psychic power. He could go around in the sky.

### ***The five Stalks of Lotus-flowers given by Sumittā***

It was the time of the golden occasion of welcoming the Buddha Dipaṅkarā to the great city of Rammāvatī. The citizens of Rammāvatī were repairing the road, eagerly waiting for the coming of Dipaṅkarā Buddha. While travelling through space, the ascetic Sumedhā saw the citizens being engaged cheerfully in road-reconstruction and city-decoration.



Wondering what was going on below, he came down and questioned them. They answered that they were repairing the road in order that the Buddha and his disciples could tread on it comfortably.

The ascetic Sumedhā felt greatly delighted and thought: "Oh! it's very hard to hear the word 'Buddha', and it is, indeed, harder to become a Buddha." He requested them to give him a chance to repair a part of the road.

Although the road-repairing could be finished quickly by his supernormal power, he used his own labour with the view that he would earn more merit by using his labour than by using his super-normal power. Before he finished repairing his portion of the road, the Buddha and his disciples came. To prevent the feet of the Buddha and his disciples from getting soiled, he prostrated himself on the mud to form a human-bridge. Among the welcoming people, there was a young woman named Sumittā. As soon as the young woman saw the ascetic, she was very happy and delighted. So, she gave five lotus-flowers to him leaving three lotus-flowers in her hands. The ascetic offered the flowers to the Buddha while lying on the muddy road.

### ***The firm Determination and the bold Proclamation***

On seeing the Buddha's noble glory, the young Sumedhā thought: "If I wish, I can even today become an Arahāt who has eliminated all kilesās (defilements). Yet it is not appropriate for me to leave others wandering in saṃsāra although I have enough energy to save all beings. I will try to become a Buddha like the Buddha Dipaṅkarā. So he immediately decided with firm resolution to become a Buddha.

Afterwards, he made the following bold proclamations:-

***Buddho bodeyyamī*** = As I know the Four Noble Truths, so shall I make others know them;

***Mutto moceyyamī*** = As I am liberated from the bonds of life, so shall I make others be liberated likewise;

***Tiṇṇo Tāreyyamī*** = As I swim across the great whirlpool of saṃsāra, so shall I make others do the same.

The Buddha Dipaṅkarā, standing in front of Sumedhā preordained as follows: "This young

ascetic, lying down as a bridge at the risk of his life, will become a Buddha like me in the future." On hearing this, the audience cheered and honoured Sumedhā. The Buddha did not tread on him, but passed by him. The disciples of the Buddha followed suit. The future Buddha, Sumedhā ascetic, having gained the preordainment given by the Dīpaṅkara Buddha, got up and sat crosslegged with great joy. When he reviewed ways and means to be a Buddha, he found the Ten Noble Perfections - i.e. charity, morality... etc. While he reflected on the Ten Perfections repeatedly, the earth shook violently as if it cheered up the Buddhisatta.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfections***

The ascetic Sumedhā, the Bodhisatta, fulfilled the Ten Perfections with unshakable effort throughout his uncountable existences.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Charity***

Firstly, he fulfilled the perfection of charity, giving away his own properties, both animates and inanimates to others. By the

fulfilment of the perfection of charity, he did not aspire to receive worldly pleasures, but to achieve the Supreme Enlightenment. He fulfilled the perfection of charity in many existences. Among them the lives of King Sivi and King Vessantarā are very well known. King Sivi, the Bodhisatta, was very earnest in giving charity, and so Sakka, the king of Devas, wanted to investigate his inclination. Thus, the Sakka, in the form of an old blind brahmin, asked for an eye of King Sivi. The King Sivi took out both of his eyes and offered them to him lavishly.

Also, the Bodhisatta, in the life of King Vessantarā, donated food, clothing and other utensils, that were valued at six hundred-thousand silver coins, in six pavilions daily. Once, the brahmins from Kalinga asked the king to donate them the invaluable white elephant and the king offered it generously too. The people objected to the last donation for the white elephant was regarded as a great honourable treasure to the country and to the people. Therefore, he had to forsake his royal palace and live as an ascetic at the valley of Vaṅkabā in the Himavanta together with his Queen Maddī Devī, his son Jāli and his daughter Kahnājina.

During that time, the brahmin Jūjakā asked for his children and he again offered them. He also offered his wife Queen Maddī to the Sakka who disguised himself as a brahmin.

Thus, the Bodhisatta had donated not only his own properties but also his wife and children in the fulfilment of the perfection of charity throughout his past existences. Moreover, he had sacrificed his own limbs and even his own life without hesitation in many existences.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Morality***

Controlling bodily and verbal actions in order to avoid demerits is called Morality or Precepts (Sīla). There are different kinds of Sīla -- five precepts, eight precepts, ..etc. The Bodhisatta fulfilled the perfection of morality in his many past lives. There is a well known example of Prince Alīnasattu who fulfilled the perfection of morality. The father of Prince Alīnasattu, in hunting in the forest, got to a banyan tree that was dominated by an ogre who had the right to catch and eat everybody whosoever passed near by. He returned home



after giving a promise to the ogre that he would come back the next day to be eaten by the ogre. When his son Alīnasattu learnt about that matter, the prince himself went to the ogre on behalf of his father. When the ogre saw the prince coming boldly, the ogre dared not kill him. Finally, the ogre listened to the teachings of the prince and became one who observed the five precepts. The Bodhisatta had already sacrificed his life to fulfil the perfection of charity. Why dared not he risk his life in fulfilling the perfection of morality ?

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Renunciation***

Leading an ascetic life and forsaking the worldly sensual pleasure is called the fulfilment of the perfection of renunciation. There are many lives of the Bodhisatta who fulfilled the perfection of renunciation. Of them, the life of Prince Ayoghara is the most notable. After the birth of Prince Ayoghara, he had to live only in an iron cage due to the danger of ogres. He had to learn lessons there up to the age of sixteen. When he was sixteen, his father arranged to give him the throne

and he was taken out of the cage. At that time, the prince thought to himself: "I had been in my mother's womb for ten months and in the iron cage for sixteen years. Though I had escaped from them, I have not escaped from death yet." So, he relinquished the royal throne and went to the forest to lead an ascetic life.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Wisdom***

In fulfilling the perfection of wisdom one has to seek the knowledge and develop the wisdom first. Then one has to teach others what one has already learnt and perform meritorious deeds for the welfare of others by his knowledge. Such a deed is called the fulfilment of the perfection of wisdom. It is obvious that the Bodhisatta Mahosadha, in the fulfilment of the perfection of wisdom, performed public welfare-work by the power of his wisdom. The king Cūḷanī Brahmadatta planned to arrest one hundred kings of the Jambudīpa and kill them by poisoning their liquors. Mahosadha, the wise man, destroyed that plan by the power of his wisdom. Moreover, Mahosadha, by his wisdom, was able to settle the dispute between

the two kings, Cūḷanī Brahmadatta and Videharāja, to a peaceful situation without any casualty.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Effort***

Every exertion for the welfare of all beings is called the fulfilment of the perfection of effort. The Bodhisatta never slackened his effort. Either for his own benefit or for others, he diligently put forth strenuous effort without hesitation. He never gave up anything out of idleness or sleepiness; he was always diligent regardless of heat or cold, early or late. In the life of Mahājanaka, the diligent effort of the Bodhisatta was notable. One day, Mahājanaka, together with seven hundred people, sailed in a ship for the sake of trading in other lands. While the ship was crossing the seas, it was violently struck by a storm. Although all men on board were desperate and did not attempt to survive the disaster, the Bodhisatta used all his strength and swam in the wide ocean for seven days. Then he not only escaped from the disaster with the help of the goddess Manimekhalā but also gained the throne of Mithilā. If he did not make any effort to swim, he would not meet anyone who would save him, and he would die like others.



## ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Patience***

Tolerance and forbearance arise out of a peaceful mind with the thought: "If I retaliate the ill-treatment imposed by a stupid person, I shall also be a stupid one." Such a practice is called the fulfilment of the perfection of patience. The Bodhisatta, for the welfare of all beings, fulfilled the perfection of patience in every existence. Regarding the fulfilment of the perfection of patience, the life of the great monkey-king is remarkable. While a brahmin, the future Devadatta, climbed up a tree, a branch broke, and he fell into a ravine. As the monkey saw him crying, the monkey took him out of the ravine. While the tired monkey was sleeping with his head upon the brahmin's lap, the stupid ungrateful brahmin mercilessly struck the monkey's head with a stone in order to have its flesh as his meal. So, the monkey woke up and suddenly ran up a tree. But the monkey still worried that the stupid brahmin might lose his way in the forest and die. As he dared not get down to the ground, he jumped from one tree to another, showing the brahmin the way to his home by the drops of blood shedding from his head.

## ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Truthfulness***

Telling truth and keeping one's promise is called the perfection of truthfulness. The Bodhisatta did not tell lies; he kept his word as he promised to others and he did as he said in order to fulfil the perfection of truthfulness.

The life of King Mahāsutasoma is remarkable in the fulfilment of the perfection of truthfulness. While the Bodhisatta became Mahāsutasoma, King Porisāda was expelled from his country, because he was found eating human flesh. He lived in a forest hunting human beings passing by. One day his sole was pierced by a sharp stump. In order to heal the wound, he made a pledge to the guardian deva of a banyan tree, saying: "Oh Deva, help me, please! If you heal my wound during one week, I will offer you as a sacrifice the blood from the throats of all Jambudīpa kings." Within one week his wound healed of its own accord, but he thought that it was cured by the guardian deva of the banyan tree. Thus he caught all Jumbudīpa Kings to offer their blood as a sacrifice. King Sutasoma, just before being arrested, made a promise to a brahmin to listen to the Dhamma recited by the brahmin. So he

requested Porisāda to let him fulfil his promise to the brahmin, promising that he would come back after listening to the Dhamma. Porisāda released him easily. After he had heard the Dhamma, though he knew that he would be killed, he came back to Porisāda without breaking his promise. Porisāda was surprised to see him again and asked why he was not afraid to die. King Sutasoma preached the Dhamma to Porisāda and thus Porisāda became a good man. So he released all the arrested kings. With the help of King Sutasoma, Porisāda regained his kingdom.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Resolution***

The Pāli word, "Adhiṭṭhāna" means firm determination or resolution to perform the good deeds that have already been planned to be done. The Budhisatta, in his many past existences, fulfilled the perfection of resolution. It is most obvious that the Bodhisatta fulfilled the perfection of resolution in the life of Prince Temiya. The Bodhisatta, in his previous existence before the life of Prince Temiya, had been in hell for some minor error in his judgement over disputes as a king. The one-month-

old prince Temiya, lying under a white royal parasol, attained the knowledge of Jātissara that could recall the previous existences. While he was gazing at the white parasol, he saw his life in hell. He was greatly shocked and afraid of becoming a king. So, the goddess of the white parasol, who had been his mother in a past life, knowing this intention, advised him thus, "My beloved son, Temiya, don't be afraid; if you don't want to be a king, pretend yourself to be a dumb and deaf person."

From that time onwards, he made up his mind to pretend as a dumb and deaf person. So he did not speak and he did not listen to anyone. When he was sixteen, his father decided that he was not worthy of the royal throne and gave the order to expel him to the forest and kill him there. When he was about to be killed, he explained to his parents why he pretended to be deaf and dumb. Then he made himself a recluse.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Loving-kindness (Mettā)***

Mettā means wishing for the well-being of others. One, who has cultivated loving-kindness, does not look at others' faults even

when he is insulted verbally or bodily. Only with the view on the virtues of others, he goes on endeavouring for others' welfare.

To become a fully-enlightened Buddha, the Bodhisatta fulfilled the perfection of loving-kindness in his many past existences. In the life of the ascetic Suvāṇṇasāma, he lived in the forest and looked after his parents who were blinded by a venomous snake. He also loved with true loving-kindness harmless animals as well as wild beasts such as lions, tigers, leopards, etc. He cultivated loving-kindness firmly and never felt angry even towards the king, Pīḷiyakkha, who shot him with a poisoned arrow, taking him as a beast. Later, by the power of loving-kindness and truthfulness, the poison became ineffective and disappeared. Thus not only his life was saved but also his parents regained their eye-sight.

### ***The Fulfilment of the Perfection of Equanimity***

The Pāḷi word 'Upekkhā' means equilibrium of the mind, not having a bias on account of hatred or love. The life of Lomahamṣa was very famous in the fulfilment of the



perfection of equanimity. Lomahamṣa, the Bodhisatta, when his parents died, gave all his properties in donation and went into a forest. Although he wished to become an ascetic, he did not have a desire to be praised by people. So he wandered around with a single set of clothing. He did not stay for a long time in a place where he was well treated and revered. When he reached a village, though he was jeered and mocked insolently by wicked children and drunkards, he was not angry with them. In a cemetery, he slept with his head on a skull. The wicked kids gathered, and insulted him by spitting and discharging excrement and urine on him. He neither got angry with the children nor blamed them, nor felt depressed. Some people offered him flowers, good food, and drinks. But he did not feel affectionate towards them either. His attitude towards good and bad was indifferent. He steadfastly maintained an equilibrium of mind (Upekkhā) under any situation.

### ***Ten Pāramīs and Thirty Pāramīs***

When the above ten Pāramīs are multiplied by Pāramī (minor Perfection), Upapāramī (middle Perfection) and Paramattha Pāramī (major

perfection), there are altogether thirty kinds of Pāramī. For example, if material things are donated as the fulfilment of Pāramī, it is called Dāna Pāramī. If body-organs such as eye and kidney are given away, it is called Dāna Upapārami. Moreover, if one's own life is offered to others, it is called Dāna Paramattha Pāramī.

Bodhisatta, who constantly fulfilled the Ten Perfections through four Asaṅkhyeyyas and one lakh world systems, reached the zenith of his fulfilment in the life of King Vesantarā.

### Three Noble Practices (Cariya)

The Bodhisatta, in fulfilling the perfections throughout his previous existences, practised the following three cariyas:-

(a) *Lokattha Cariya* = the noble practice aiming at the welfare of all beings;

(b) *Ñātattha Cariya* = the noble practice aiming at the welfare of his own relatives and race;

(c) *Buddhattha Cariya*=the noble practice aiming at becoming the fully enlightened Buddha who can save beings from the sufferings of Saṃsāra.

### *The Fivefold Great Sacrifice*

In the exercise of Ten perfections in his many past existences, the Bodhisatta made the following fivefold great sacrifice:-

- (1) the sacrifice of the most valuable treasure, royal kingdom and royal properties (Dhanapariccāga);
- (2) the sacrifice of sons and daughters (Puttapariccāga);
- (3) the sacrifice of one's wife (Bhāriyapariccāga);
- (4) the sacrifice of one's limb (Aṅgapariccāga); and
- (5) the sacrifice of one's own life (Jīvitapariccāga).

The Bodhisatta fulfilled the perfections, the fivefold sacrifices and the three cariyas



throughout his past existences, in order to achieve only one reward, i.e. the Omniscience or Sabbaññutañāṇa. Indeed, the Sabbaññutañāṇa is so great that the Tathāgatas have to exert great effort for a very long duration in order to achieve it.

### ***Incomparable Achievements Arise out of Incomparable Sacrifices***

The Bodhisatta's sacrificial and selfless efforts, aiming at the reward of the Omniscience, are only for the welfare of all beings, but not for his own. Everyone should help others liberally for their welfare. As these perfections lead the whole society to peace and prosperity, he who fulfils the perfections can also achieve success as much as he does.

As a matter of fact, the Bodhisatta gave his life as a sacrifice for the welfare of the world selflessly and peerlessly. So he was endowed with everything needed in his final life. He is incomparable! He is supreme! He is peerless! We should follow the perfect example of the Buddha!

# **The Life of Prince Siddhattha, the Future Buddha**

## ***The Demise from the Abode of Devas***

After being prophesied by the Dipaṅkarā Buddha and the other twenty three Buddhas who appeared during four Asaṅkhyeyyas and one hundred thousand world cycles as well, the Bodhisatta fulfilled the Perfections. He had accumulated the ten Perfections completely in the life of King Vessantara. And then he was reborn as Deva Setaketu in the abode of Tusitā. The Deva enjoyed the supreme divine bliss throughout his life. When the end of his life drew near, the Devas and the Brahmas from ten thousand universes gathered and approached him. They requested, "Dear Deva, it is the right time for you to become a Buddha. May you be reborn in the human abode."

## ***The Five Great Observations***

The Bodhisatta Deva did not consent to their request instantly; he first made the following five great observations:-

**(1) Period (Kāla):** The proper period for a Buddha to appear is when the life-span of human

beings is between one hundred thousand years and one hundred years.

(2) **Island-Continent(*Dīpa*)**: Among the four great island continents, only the Jambudīpa or the Southern Island-continent is the place where Buddhas appear.

(3) **Place (*Desa*)**: Even in the southern Island--continent, Buddhas appear only in Majjhima Desa--Middle Regions.

(4) **Clan (*Kula*)**: In Majjhima Desa, Buddhas came of only royal clan, khatthiya, or Brahmin clan.

(5) **The Mother's Life-span (*Mātu āyupariccheda*)**

The future mother of Buddha must possess good moral character and must have fulfilled the perfections for one hundred thousand worlds. Moreover, her life-span must be such that she dies on the seventh day after giving birth to the Bodhisatta.

## **The Birth of the Bodhisatta at Lumbini Park**

The Deva Setaketu, after making the five great observations, promised to be reborn in the human abode. Soon after he gave his promise, he passed away from the abode of Tusitā, and was duly conceived in the womb of Mahāmayā Devī, the chief consort of King Suddhodana. Right at the time of his conception, there broke out a violent earthquake. The date of his conception was Thursday, the fullmoon day of Waso (about July) in the year 67 Mahā Era (624 B.C). While Mahāmayā Devī was sleeping in her grand chamber, having observed eight precepts, she dreamed as follows:-

"The four Kings of Devas bathed her in Lake Anotatta in the Himavanta and dressed her in celestial costumes. Next she was put to sleep with her head towards the east in the golden mansion inside the silver mountain. At that time, she felt that a white elephant entered her womb through her right side."

### ***The Three Bold Utterances***

On the fullmoon day of Kason (about May), the royal mother, Mahāmāyā Devī, set

out on a journey to Devadaha where her relatives lived. Now the ten-month duration of her pregnancy was up. Between Kapilavatthu and Devadaha, there was a grove of Sal trees known as Lumbini.

The Sal trees were in full bloom. The Bodhisatta was born while the royal mother was holding on to a branch of a fully blooming Sal tree. At that time, too, the earth quaked violently.

Devas and Brahmas paid homage to the Bodhisatta who had just been born. The Bodhisatta prince, standing on the ground, looked towards the ten directions. After taking seven steps northwards and standing erect firmly on the ground, he boldly proclaimed the following solemn utterances:-

**(a) Aggohamasami Lokassa:**

I am the foremost among the living beings of the world.

**(b) Jeṭṭhohamasami Lokassa:**

I am the greatest among the living beings of the world.

**(c) Setṭhohamasami Lokassa:**

I am the noblest among the living beings of the world.



Next, the royal mother, Mahāmāyā, returned to Kapilavatthu with her son, the Bodhisatta prince. The Bodhisatta was born on Friday, the fullmoon day of Kason (about May) in the year 69 Mahā Era (623 B.C). Mahāmāyā passed away on the seventh day after giving birth to her son and was reborn in the Tusitā realm.

### **Handing over the Throne to the Bodhisatta**

The royal father King Suddhodana invited the brahmin prophets, who mastered the three Vedas, and asked them to examine the physical marks of the prince on the fifth day after he had been delivered. The seven Brahmins predicted: "If the prince leads the life of a householder, he will become a Universal Monarch; if he renounces the world he will become a Buddha." The youngest prophet Koṇḍañña, however, prophesied, "He will certainly become a Buddha." The prince was named Siddhattha as he could fulfil the desires of all living beings and bring about their prosperity as well. He belonged to the Gotama clan.

After the death of Mother Māyā Devī, Mahāpajāpati Gotamī, the sister of Māyā Devī, became the Chief Queen of King Suddhodana, and the royal stepmother Gotami brought up and looked after the prince on behalf of her elder sister.

At the age of sixteen, the prince had already learnt what a prince should do. The king Suddhodana wanted his son to become a Universal Monarch. The King managed to construct the three grand, magnificent mansions called Ramma, Subha and Suramma as royal residence for the prince to sojourn during the three seasons in turn and he crowned the prince king so that the latter should not renounce the world and live in the forest.

The prince chose Yasodarā as his consort. She was the daughter of King Suppabuddha who was the brother of his late mother. He made her his chief queen and lived in the lap of great luxury at each of the three elegant palaces in accord with the three seasons.

## **Seeing the Four Great Omens**

The Prince Siddhattha, after enjoying the luxurious pleasures of the King for 13



years, came to the age of twenty-nine. He used to go to the royal garden together with his retinue. On his way to the royal garden, he saw the four great omens, namely an old man, a sick man, a dead man and a recluse. Each of them was created by devas (gods) after an interval of four months. The royal father Suddhodana took measures to prevent the Bodhisatta from seeing these miserable sights with the help of his guards, because he was worried that the Bodhisatta might renounce the worldly life. So the Bodhisatta had never seen the aged, the sick, the dead and the recluse till then. When he saw the four great omens consecutively, he was shocked and remorseful. An idea flashed upon his mind: "I shall also, one day, become old, sick and die." He could not bring himself to enjoy the luxury and pleasure of the palace. Therefore, he was determined: "I shall renounce the worldly pleasure today to become a recluse like the one whom I had seen." While he was staying in the royal garden, he was informed that his chief queen Yasodarā had given birth to a son and he was startled, thinking; "There appears one more fetter." And he decided, "I shall renounce the world tonight."

He murmured: "This son will hinder me from renouncing the world just like the Devil Rāhu seizing the moon." That is why the royal son was named Rāhulā.

### ***Renunciation***

When he got to the palace from the royal garden, he went to bed early, because he did not want to enjoy the royal entertainment as usual. The lady-attendants fell asleep in the light of scented oil-lamps. They were all asleep--some with their thighs or calves exposed, some with saliva oozing from the corners of their lips, some opening their mouths wide, some snoring and some rolling, turning and talking in their sleep. When the Bodhisatta woke up at midnight, he felt that the sleeping lady-attendants were corpses and he himself were in a cemetery. So he decided to leave the palace at once.

### ***The Deterrence of the Evil Māra and the Welcome of Devas and Brahmas***

The Bodhisatta awoke Minister Channa and ordered him to get the royal horse Kaṇḍaka saddled. Then he went to the royal chamber

of Yasodarā as he wished to see his son. Yasodarā with the son by her side was sleeping, embracing him warmly. Although he wanted to take his son into his hands, he turned back from the threshold of the chamber lest she would be awakened and be a disturbance to his renunciation.

The Bodhisatta, riding on Kaṇḍaka, left the palace along with Minister Channa. It was Monday, the fullmoon day of Waso, 97 Mahā Era (594 B.C). Thereupon, the evil Māra, standing in the sky, deterred, saying: "On the seventh day from now, the Flying Wheel of Treasure will appear and you will be the Universal Monarch who rules over the four island-continents. Do not renounce this world."

"Oh, Māra, I know that the Wheel of Treasre will arise seven days later. I don't want the Universal Kingship. I will strive to become a Buddha." So saying he went on his journey. The devas and the brahmas who were looking forward to the appearance of the Buddha were delighted so much that they went together with the Bodhisatta, holding up beautiful, colourful torches, scattering flowers and sandal wood powder, singing and playing musical instruments.

***The Lamentation of the Whole Palace***

On reaching the other bank of Anomā river at dawn, the Bodhisatta took his hair-knot by one hand, and with a sword in the other, cut it off. The hair remained at that length, i.e. at two finger-breadth, until his death.

When he threw up the hair-knot into the sky, making a solemn resolution: "If I shall certainly become a Buddha, may this hair stay in the sky", the hair did stay in the sky. Sakka, the king of devas, received it with a jewelled casket and took it to Tāvātimsa. Then he built the Cuḷāmani pagoda, enshrining the hair relic in it.

Next the Bodhisatta received the alms-bowl and the yellow robes offered by the Brahma Ghaṭikāra. Then, doning the robe, he took the life of an ascetic. Brahma Ghaṭikāra took the royal dress of the Bodhisatta to the Brahma abode and built Dussa Cetiya, enshrining the dress. The Bodhisatta sent his minister Channa with the horse Kaṇḍaka back to the capital. Kaṇḍaka left his master in great despair. When it lost sight of its master, it could bear its grief no more and died. Channa continued his journey alone and reported the news to the king. On hearing the news, the whole palace burst into tears.

### ***The Request of Bimbisāra***

After becoming an ascetic, the Bodhisatta stayed in the mango grove called Anuppiya near Anoma river for seven days and then he proceeded to Rājagaha. When he went into the town for alms-food, the citizens looked admiringly at the splendid and graceful appearance of the Bodhisatta. On hearing the news, King Bimbisāra followed and pleaded the Bodhisatta who was residing at the foot of Mount Pantava. The King pleaded with the Bodhisatta not to lead a homeless life as he was still very young. Moreover, the King admired and respected the Bodhisatta so much that he offered his kingship to the Bodhisatta. The Bodhisatta refused what he was offered. At last King Bimbisāra requested the Bodhisatta to come first to his country when he attained the Buddhahood.

## **PRACTISING AUSTERITIES**

### ***Devas Thought that Siddhattha was dead***

The Bodhisatta left for the groves not far from the southern part of Rājagaha. He placed himself under the guidance of the two



ascetic leaders, Āḷāra and Udaka, and practised for Jhāna (concentration). He soon gained the mundane jhanic ecstasy. Knowing his capability, the two ascetic leaders made him leader as themselves. But he did not accept their proposals. He decided that the power of his jhānic ecstasy was not the way to attain the omniscience. Thus he proceeded to the Uruvela grove.

In those days, there prevailed an ideology among the ascetics that one can attain enlightenment only by means of practising strenuous and severe austerities. Hence the Bodhisatta practised them in the Uruvela grove for six years. He took food very sparingly. He undertook the difficult practice very severely, having just a fruit for the whole day. Sometimes he took no food at all. His flesh and blood dried up because of the severe effort. The thirty-two special bodily marks disappeared and the bright golden complexion became gray also. The skin of the belly stuck to the spinal-cord. His sacred body was reduced to a skeleton. Indeed, he was nearly dying. The skin of the head wrinkled and withered like a little tender gourd dried up in the sun. As he was very frail, he fell down and fainted while walking with the contemplation of breathing-out and



breathing-in. Some devas thought that Siddhattha was dead.

After having practised austerities for six years, he reflected that he would not be able to attain the enlightenment unless he was healthy and strong. So he went round for alms again and followed the Middle Way (Majjhimapaṭipadā). Thus, his complexion became golden and bright again, and he became strong enough to practise the Middle Way. The thirty-two special bodily marks of the greatest man reappeared. The group of five ascetics--Koṇḍañña, Vappa, Bhaddiya, Mahānāma and Assaji--had attended to the Bodhisatta while he was practising austerities for six long years. They were looking forward to hear the very first discourse when he attained Buddhahood. Nevertheless, when he partook of food again by going round for alms to sustain himself and followed the Middle Way, they became disappointed with him. So they departed from him and left for the Migadāya (Deer Park).

### ***Sujāta's Offering of Milk-Rice***

There was a market town called Senā near Urūvela Grove. Sujāta, the daughter of a wealthy man there, offered food in oblation to

the deva of a banyan tree on the fullmoon day of Kason yearly as all her wishes were fulfilled. On the fullmoon day of Kason of that year, Sujāta offered milk-rice together with the gold cup to the Bodhisatta, who was sitting magnificently under the banyan tree. She thought that the guardian deva himself was sitting to receive her offering.

After the Bodhisatta had cleansed himself in the River Nerañjarā, he took forty-nine mouthfuls of milk-rice. After he had the food, he placed the gold cup afloat in the river, making the solemn resolution: "If I shall become a Buddha today, may this gold cup float upstream." The gold cup floated upstream for eighty cubits and then sank down.

### ***Vanquishing the Māra***

Then the Bodhisatta stayed the whole day in the Sal grove near Nerañjarā, reflecting on the constituent parts of the body. In the evening, on the way to the Bodhi Tree, he accepted eight handfuls of grass offered by Sotthiya, the grass-cutter. The Bodhisatta approached the Bodhi Tree from eastward, went around the tree clockwise three times, and scattered the eight handfuls of grass at the foot of

the tree. Thereupon, the magnificent jewelled throne, 'Aparājita pallaṅka' appeared marvellously. He sat cross-legged on it, facing eastward with his back against the trunk of the Bodhi Tree.

Then he made the solemn resolution: "Let my flesh and blood dry up, and let only my skin, nerves and bones remain! Never shall I unfold this cross-legged position until I attain Buddhahood!" Then the Bodhisatta cultivated mindfulness of breathing-out and breathing-in and remained completely absorbed in the fourth jhānic ecstasy.

On seeing the Bodhisatta seated with firm and solemn resolution, Māra knew that the Bodhisatta would certainly attain Buddhahood on that day. So he disturbed and fought him, riding Girimekhalā elephant and leading numerous fighting forces armed with various weapons. The Māra attacked the Bodhisatta incessantly by creating violent storms, by showering weapons and hot ash, etc., as if the world were going to be destroyed. The Bodhisatta, however, vanquished him by virtue of the power of Perfections which he had accomplished through four asaṅkhyeyyas and one hundred-thousand worlds. The Bodhisatta repulsed successfully the force of Māra before the sun-set.

## ***The Attainment of Buddhahood***

Contemplating on mindfulness of breathing-out and breathing-in and remaining absorbed in the fourth *Ānāpāna* jhanic ecstasy, the Bodhisatta gained the *Pubbenivāsānussatiñāṇa*--the higher psychic power to remember past existences of himself as well as of others -- during the first watch of the night. In the middle watch of the night, he attained *Dibbacakkhuñāṇa* -- the power of supernormal vision to see penetratively things, big or small, far or near, fine or gross, like the divine eyes. In the last watch of the night, the Bodhisatta contemplated the "Law of Cause and Effect" and practised insight meditation. Then he fully realized the Four Noble Truths and attained *Āsavekkhaya* or *Arahattamaggañāṇa* -- the higher psychic power which enables one to eradicate defilements absolutely.

As soon as the Bodhisatta gained the *Arahatta-magga-ñāṇa*, he also attained the Omniscience, *Sabbaññuta-ñāṇa*, the Fully Enlightenment. He attained Buddhahood at the age of 35. It was Wednesday, the fullmoon day of Kason, in the year 103 *Mahā* Era (589 B.C). When he became the Enlightened One who was worthy of veneration of all living

beings -- human beings, devas and brahmas -- and was incomparable by gaining Omniscience. All devas and brahmas from the ten-thousand worlds came to pay obeisance to the Buddha delightfully and happily. The earth vehemently trembled and resounded with the roll of thunder bursting loudly in the sky. All flowering plants of the whole world bloomed out of season, as if they were paying homage to the Buddha.

### ***The Virtue of Sabbaññuta-ñāṇa***

The Buddha gained the great Omniscience, Sabbaññutañāṇa, in his last existence as he had accomplished the Ten Perfections, the Three Noble Practices and the five Great Sacrifices. By the power of Omniscience, the Buddha knew all things that should be known. He fully realized every phenomenon -- both the conditioned and the unconditioned.

Of all that should be known, the Buddha absolutely knew about each and everything from the beginning to the end. Here are the three attributes of the Omniscience:

- (1) Knowing all things to be known without exception,



- (2) Knowing the natural tendencies of the person who is going to hear the discourse, and
- (3) Knowing how to expound the discourse.

After achieving the supreme Enlightenment, the Buddha, rejoicing at his conquest, uttered the following Verse of Victory.

1. *Anekajāti samāsaram  
sandhāvissam anibbisam  
Gahakārakam gavesanto  
dukkhā jāti punappunam*
2. *Gahakārakadiṭṭho si  
Puna geham na kāhasi  
Sabbā te phāsukā bhaggā  
gahakutam visamkhitam  
Visamkhāragatam cittam  
taṇhanam khayam ajjhagā.*

1. Through many a birth I wandered in Saṃsāra, seeking, but not finding, the builder of the house. Sorrowful is to be born again and again.

2. O! house--builder! Thou art seen. Thou shalt build no house again. All thy rafters are broken. Thy ridge-pole is shattered.



My mind has attained the unconditioned.  
Achieved is the end of craving.

## The Six Heretics Who Claimed To Be Buddhas

The Buddha appeared as an incomparable Omniscient One in the world. There had been a rumour about the appearance of the Omniscient Buddha one thousand years beforehand.

There had also appeared many branches of knowledge including the system for identifying the features of the Greatest Man. The people were eager to see the Buddha, the Exalted One. At that time, there appeared many impostors who claimed to be the Buddha. Among them were six prominent heretics who were roaming about with their followers proclaiming their own doctrines.

They were:

- (1) Pūrāṇa Kassapa,
- (2) Makkhali Gosāla,
- (3) Ajita Kesakambala,
- (4) Pakudha Kaccāyana,
- (5) Sañcaya Belaṭṭhaputta, and
- (6) Nigaṇṭha Nāṭaputta.

They were, in fact, just impostors who appeared prior to the enlightenment of the Real Buddha. So the wise did not accept them as the real Buddhas. However, the ignorant majority went to them for refuge taking them to be the real Buddhas and got ensnared in their wrong views.

### ***Seven Days Each at Seven Places***

- (1) **Pallaṅka Sattāha:** - After attaining the Buddhahood, the Buddha remained seated on the throne under the Bodhi Tree enjoying the blissful peace of Phalasamāpatti for the whole week. (This seven-day period is called Pallaṅka Sattāha.)
- (2) **Animisa Sattāha** - After rising from the throne, the Buddha went to the place 48 cubits away to the north-east of the throne and stood there gazing back at the golden throne and the Bodhi Tree without closing his eyes for one whole week. (This seven-day period is called Animisa Sattāha.)

- (3) **Caṅkama Sattāha** - Next, he spent one whole week walking up and down a jewelled path which extended east to west 60 cubits between the Bodhi Tree and the place where he had formerly stood. (This seven-day period is called Caṅkamasattāha.)
- (4) **Ratanāgara Sattāha** - After that the Buddha went to the jewelled chamber, known as Ratanāgara, which was created by devas at a place 40 cubits away from the Bodhi Tree. It was situated to the north-west of the Bodhi Tree. There the Buddha contemplated his most profound teaching-**Abhidhammā**. When he contemplated the final portion of the Abhidhammā, known as Mahā-paṭṭhāna, his mind became very pure and consequently his blood and complexion also became very clear. Thereupon, the six coloured rays brilliantly emanated from every part of his sacred body and spread through the whole universe. (This seven-day period is called Ratanāgara Sattāha.)

- (5) **Ajapāla Sattāha** - The Buddha then went to the Ajapāla banyan tree where the goatherds used to rest. The banyan tree was situated, at the bank of the Nerañjarā River, 128 cubits away to the east of the Bodhi Tree. Under the banyan tree, the Buddha enjoyed the blissful peace of Phalasamāpatti for seven days. During these days, the three daughters of Māra, who was in despair because he had lost the battle against the Bodhisatta, felt pity for their father. So they came to entice the Buddha in various seductive guises. As their enticing had no effect on the Buddha, they went away. (This seven-day period is called Ajapāla Sattāha.)
- (6) **Mucalinda Sattāha** - There was a *barringatanis accutangula* tree, called Mucalinda, which was situated two hundred cubits away to the south-east of the Bodhi Tree. There was also a lake called Mucalinda near that tree. The Buddha went to the foot of that tree and enjoyed the

bliss of Nibbāna by entering upon Phalasamāpatti. At that time great showers of rain fell for seven successive days and thus the weather was very cold. The Dragon King, Mucalinda, of the lake sheltered the Buddha by winding his body seven times around the Buddha's body and holding his head over the Buddha's head. (This seven-day period is called Mucalinda Sattāha.)

- (7) **Rājāyatana Sattāha** - Finally the Buddha went to *buchanania lalifolia* tree called Rajāyatana, which lay 160 cubits away from the Bodhi Tree. There he enjoyed the blissful peace of Nibbāna by entering upon Phalasamāpatti for seven days. (This seven-day period is called Rājāyatana Sattāha)

## Offering the First Alms-food

After the Rājāyatana Sattāha the Buddha ate myrobalan fruit offered by the Sakka and got defecated. He also cleaned his teeth and mouth by chewing liquorice wood, also



offered by the Sakka, and washed his face with the pure water of Lake Anotatta. Indeed, he did not have any food during those 49 days. The nutritive essence of milk-rice of Sujāta sustained him through that long period. His complexion was radiant and his face was calm and peaceful.

While the Buddha was staying under the Rājāyatana tree, the two merchant-brothers, Tapussa and Bhallika, citizens of Pokkharavati of Ukkalā Division, were on their way to Majjhima desa (Middle Region) with 500 carts loaded with goods. They were informed about the appearance of the Buddha by a deva who had been one of their relatives in their past existence. Thus they came to venerate the Buddha.

The merchant-brothers went to the Buddha and offered him rice-cake and honey-comb. The Buddha blessed them and let them take refuge in the Buddha and the Dhamma. They were the very first devotees to have taken refuge in the two Sacred Gems. Afterwards, they pleaded the Buddha to give them something to be worshipped for ever. Thus the Buddha touched his head with his right hand and gave them some hair. When they arrived back in Ukkalā, they built a shrine called



Tikumba on the Siṅguttara Hill and enshrined the hair relics. It is traditionally believed that that shrine is the Shwedagon pagoda in Myanmar now.

## Request to Expound the Dhamma

After staying at the seven places for seven days each, the Buddha went back to the Ajapāla banyan tree from Rājāyatana, contemplated the dhamma which he had gained and pondered thus: "I have already attained the Omniscience and have already done what is to be done at the foot of the Bodhi Tree for my own sake. But, in the life of Sumedhā, I proclaimed that:-

***Buddho bodheyzam*** = As I know the Four Noble Truths, so shall I make others know them;

***Mutto moceyyam*** = As I am free from the fetters binding me to existences, so shall I make others free from the fetters;

***Tiṇṇo Tāreyyam*** = As I cross over the whirlpool of Saṃsara, so shall I make others cross over it.

In accordance with these proclamations, it is now the right time to expound the Dhamma.

But the Dhamma that I have realized is indeed profound, subtle and difficult to comprehend. All beings in the world will not be able to understand the dhamma as they are grossly overwhelmed by greed, anger and ignorance. It will be merely wearisome for me if I were to expound the dhamma. Reflecting thus, the Buddha became hesitant to teach the dhamma.

Knowing the Buddha's tendency, the Brahma named Sahampati, together with devas and brahmas, came and requested the Buddha to expound the Dhamma.

It is the nature of the Buddhas to teach the Dhamma only after being requested. To teach the Dhamma only after being requested makes the Dhamma more virtuous and more respectable. Moreover in those days the Brahma was regarded as the Buddha and venerated by the whole world. As the Brahma himself requested the Buddha to teach the dhamma, it became the most respectable and venerable Dhamma.

The Buddha himself actually knew, although the whole world was veiled with

ignorance, that there were some persons who were wise enough to understand his Teachings and that they would lose the chance of being liberated from the whirlpool of Saṃsarā if they did not hear the Teachings (the Dhamma).

### ***Planning to Expound the First Discourse***

After deciding to preach his teachings he looked with his Buddha's Eye to whom he should preach the Dhamma. His two former worldly teachers, Āḷāra and Udaka, first appeared in his vision. However he came to realize that Āḷāra passed away only seven days ago and Udaka only at the midnight of the previous day. Moreover, he found that they were in the Arūpa -- brahma Realm where no one can listen to the Dhamma.

Then he continued to contemplate who would be able to understand his teachings. He saw the group of five ascetics who had attended to him when he was meditating at Uruvela forest. They were now in Migadāya Forest near Bārānasi. So he went on foot to that forest which was eighteen yojanas (about 144 miles) away from the Bodhi Tree.

## *Turning the Wheel of Dhamma*

He arrived at the Migadaya forest (a sanctuary for deer) on the evening of the fullmoon day of Waso. He made himself known as a Buddha to the five ascetics and expounded the very first discourse known as *Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta*, which consists of the two extremes to be avoided, the Middle Path to be followed and the Four Noble Truths to be realized. After hearing that discourse, Venerable Koṇḍañña and the eighteen crores of devas and brahmas became sotāpannas (stream winners). There broke out a booming earth-quake — a great rejoicing of the devas and the brahmas over the preaching of the discourse.

The Buddha preached this Sutta in the evening, when the sun had just set and the moon began to rise. It was Saturday, the fullmoon day of Waso (about May) in the year 103 Mahā Era (588 B.C). There came numerous devas and brahmas to listen to his Teachings. The flowers bloomed out of season. Thus the whole world was beautifully brilliant in the radiance of the celestial beings. Then the Buddha explained the Sutta in detail to the four ascetics who were not yet enlightened to Noble Truths.

Vappa, Bhaddiya, Mahānāma and Assaji practised in accordance with the Wheel of Dhamma for four days, from the first waning day to the fourth. And one after another, they entered the stream of Ariya Path. On the fifth waning day of Waso, the Buddha proceeded to preach "*Anattalakkhaṇa Sutta*" to the Group of Five Bhikkhus. At the end of this Sutta, they became arahats, eradicating all defilements.

Thenceforth, there arose the Order of Saṃgha in the world.

### ***The Ordination of Yasa and His Friends***

The Buddha observed the rain-retreat period together with the Group of Five Bhikkhus. At that time, in Bārāṇasi, a rich man and his wife, Sujāta, had a son called Yasa. He spent his life in ease and luxury. One day, he, however, felt disgusted at the sensual pleasure and left his house stealthily for Issipatana deer park at midnight. He arrived there before dawn and met the Buddha. The Buddha preached him some discourses. After hearing the dhamma he became a stream winner. The rich man, Yasa's father, also came to the Buddha while searching for his son. The Buddha expounded the dhamma to the rich man and he also



became a stream winner. And consequently, he was the very first layman to take refuge in the Three Gems (Tevācika).

Yasa, too, attained the Arahattaship when he heard the discourse preached to his father. The next day, the Buddha and Venerable Yasa went to his parents' house for alms-food. The Buddha expounded the discourse again and Yasa's mother and Yasa's wife became stream--winners as well. Thus they were the first laywomen to take refuge in the Triple Gems.

On hearing of Yasa's ordination, fifty-four of his friends reflected thus: "The Teachings which such a person as Yasa followed must not be an ordinary one." And so they went to the Buddha and they all were ordained as monks by the Buddha.

### ***The First Bhikkhus on Missionary Work***

At that time there were sixty-one arahats including the Buddha, in the world. Their cankers had already been extinguished. The Group of Five and fifty-five arahats led by Yasa were the 'Ehi-Bhikkhu' arahats, i.e., their lay-man appearances disappeared and they were transformed into monk's when they were merely called by the Buddha. "come on, my bhikkhus!"

They spent the first rain-retreat period in Issipatana deer park, Bārānaśī. At the end of this period the Buddha sent for the sixty arahats and admonished them thus: "Oh, Bhikkhus! I've already been freed from the defilements and so have you all. Go forth in all directions expounding the Dhamma which is excellent in the beginning, in the middle and in the end for the welfare of men and devas out of compassion to the whole world. Not two of you must go together on the same journey.

Afterwards the Buddha himself went to Uruvela grove to teach the Dhamma to one thousand ascetics led by the three Kassapa brothers, viz., Uruvela Kassapa, Nadi Kassapa and Gayā Kassapa.

While the Buddha was taking a rest at the foot of a certain tree on his way to Uruvela, he met the thirty Bhaddavaggiya brothers who were searching for a woman who had stolen their ornaments. They happened to come across the Buddha and asked the Buddha whether the Buddha had seen a woman passing by. Then the Buddha asked them in return thus: "Which is better-- searching for a lost woman or searching for oneself?" All the princes replied that searching for oneself is better. Then the Buddha

explained the Dhamma to them and they all became Stream-Winners. The Buddha ordained them as bhikkhus.

### ***Converting the One Thousand Ascetics to the Right Way***

Thereafter the Buddha proceeded to the Uruvela forest where the one thousand ascetics lived.

When he arrived there at sun-set, he asked the chief of the ascetics to let him spend the night at their fire place. The chief Kassapa told him that a fierce dragon lived at the fireplace. The Buddha asked for permission three times and was allowed to spend the night there. Then the Buddha entered the fireplace. The dragon sent out flames towards the Buddha. The Buddha sent back stronger flames and subdued the dragon. He put the dragon in his alms-bowl and showed it to the chief Kassapa. Kassapa was surprised and he requested the Buddha to keep on staying there.

In the following night, Kassapa saw the four great devas, the celestial king Sakka and brahmas respecting the Buddha.

Nevertheless, the ascetic thought: "Gotama is mighty and powerful, but he has not attained arahatship as I have." Only after the Buddha had performed one thousand five hundred and six kinds of miraculous power, the ascetics respected and admired the Buddha. They requested the Buddha to ordain them as bhikkhus.

Next the Buddha went to the Gayāsisā together with one thousand bhikkhus. There he delivered the discourse of Ādittapariyāya Sutta which explains how the whole world or the whole body is in flame, i.e., being burnt by the fire of lust, greed, anger, ignorance, rebirth, ageing, death, grief, lamentation, bodily pain, distress of mind and agony. At the end of the discourse, they all attained Arahatsip.

## **The Buddha's Visit to Rājagaha**

### ***King bimbisāra's Five Aspirations***

According to the promise that the Buddha made to King Bimbisāra in his early days of renunciation, the Buddha, together with one thousand bhikkhus led by Kassapa brothers, went to Rājagaha on the fullmoon day of Pyāso (December-January). When they arrived at the large green Palmyra grove near Rājagaha, the

King and one hundred and twenty thousand people welcomed them heartily in great pomp and ceremony.

When the Buddha narrated the jātika story of 'Mahānārada - kassapa' there, King Bimbisāra and one hundred and ten thousand people became Stream - winners and the remaining ten thousand people became established in the three Refuges.

King Bimbisāra, who had now become a stream -- winner, felt very happy and said to the Buddha: "Venerable Sir, I had five kinds of aspirations when I was a young prince. They all are now fulfilled and so I feel very happy."

The five kinds of aspirations of the King were:-

- (1) the wish to become an anointed king;
- (2) the wish that the Buddha would visit his country;
- (3) the wish to revere and attend to the Buddha when the latter visited his kingdom;
- (4) the wish that the Buddha would expound the dhamma; and
- (5) the wish to understand the dhamma taught to him.



## **The Great Donation of Veluvana Monastery**

Then King Bimbisāra became a lay-disciple of the Buddha and invited the Buddha and his one thousand bhikkhus for alms-food at his palace the next morning. Then he went back to his palace.

Next morning when the Buddha went to the palace to take alms-food, the crowd that came to pay homage to the Buddha was so big that Sakka (the king of Devas) himself had to assume the form of a young man and lead the way as a forerunner singing the Dhamma songs.

On reaching the palace, the King offered alms-food to the Buddha and the Order of Saṃgha. He also donated the great Veluvana Garden as a monastic dwelling. As he poured donation water the earth quaked as if the main roots of Buddha's Teachings had been rooted.

## **Petas, the old Relatives of King Bimbisāra**

That very night there were haunting sounds all over the palace of King Bimbisāra and so he could not sleep. Therefore he went

to the Buddha the next morning and told him what had happened.

The Buddha preached thus: 92 world cycles ago, during the time of Phussa Buddha, Bimbisāra and his relatives carried out the duties of offering alms-food to the Buddha and his Saṃgha Order. Those who did their duties well reached celestial abodes when they died. Those who stole and destroyed the properties of the Saṃgha had gone to niraya (hell) and became petas during the time of Kassapa Buddha. They saw that other petas were set free from being petas because they gained merits shared by their relatives when they had chances to say "Sādhu". There were none to share merits to the petas who were the former relatives of Bimbisāra. Therefore they supplicated to Kassapa Buddha that they did not know who would perform meritorious deeds and share merits to them.

Kassapa Buddha told them that during the time of Gotama Buddha, the supervisor of the old relative petas would become King Bimbisāra who would share merits to them and so they would be free from their woeful lives of petas. And they were very happy with the anticipation of being set free.

Indeed, when King Bimbisāra offered alms-food to the bhikkhus led by the Buddha and donated the monastery, the petas were expecting anxiously to gain merits shared by the King. But the king did not know to share merits with the petas of his relatives; so they did their frightening moanings the whole night.

The Buddha instructed the king to share merits to the dead or previous relatives whenever he performed meritorious deeds. King Bimbisāra then invited the bhikkhus led by the Buddha to have alms-food at his palace on that day. The Buddha by his supernormal power showed the king the petas who were waiting in poor dresses with frightful appearances. After offering alms-food and sharing merits, they all were free from their peta-existences. On seeing them looking well attired and having ambrosia, he was very much pleased.

Then he offered robes, beddings and monastic dwellings, and shared merits again. The petas said 'sādhu' and received celestial clothings, beddings and celestial mansions. On seeing that, the King became more pleased than before.

With reference to that incident the Buddha preached *Tirokuṭṭa Sutta* and eighty-four

thousand beings attained Ariyahood, realizing the Four Noble Truths.

### ***Upatissa, Kolita and their Heretic Master***

When the Buddha went to Rājagaha, the heretic master Sañjaya had already established a school with a large number of followers. He was one of the six heretic masters who claimed themselves to be Buddhas.

The two close friends, Upatissa and Kolita, were the sons of rich brahmins. They went to the festival held annually on the top of a mountain together with their five hundred followers. While watching the performers and the audience, an idea flashed through their mind thus, "What pleasure is there in the performance? All are bound to death within one hundred years." They felt so apprehensive of death that they went to the heretic Sañjaya and became ascetics.

Within a few days, they came to know that there was no essence in the teachings of their master and his teaching would not lead to the deliverance from suffering. Therefore they decided to search for the way to deathlessness. They made a promise that the one who found it first would tell the other.

***The Attraction of the Controlling Faculty***

While the Buddha was in Rājagaha, the Venerable Assaji Thera, one of the five-ascetic group, resided at the Veḷuvana monastery. One day as he went into the city of Rājagaha for alms-round, the ascetic Upatissa noticed his clear complexion and calm controlling faculty. Upatissa could approximately judge that he might be an arahat or an arahat-to-be who was working hard. He then followed the Venerable Assaji Thera. After the Thera had alms-food, Upatissa asked him about his teacher and his practice. Then the Venerable Assaji replied:-

***“Of things that proceed from a cause,  
Their cause the Tathāgata has told;  
And also their cessation: Thus teaches  
the Great Ascetic.”***

This verse sums up the profound philosophy of his teacher in the scientific truth of the law of cause and effect. On hearing the summary of the teachings, the ascetic Upatissa became a stream -- winner. According to his promise the ascetic Upatissa went to his friend Kolita and explained the discourse that he had heard. The ascetic Kolita also became a stream winner then and there. The two ascetics



decided to go to the Veluvana monastery and to be ordained as bhikkhus in the presence of the Buddha.

### ***The Two Chief Disciples of The Buddha***

Before going to the Buddha, they went to their heretic master and told him to come along with them. But their master refused. They persuaded him three times to come along with them, saying "Sir, the Buddha has appeared in the world. The persons longing for the Buddha will go and pay homage to the Buddha. Don't let your life pass in vain." However, the master replied, "My disciples, I don't want to be a pupil after I have been a well-known teacher; let it be; in this world there are more foolish ones than wise ones; the wise will go to Gotama; but the foolish will come to me." Saying thus he kept on staying there.

When the two disciples departed him, their followers followed suit. He felt great despair for having lost many disciples and vomitted blood as he had a broken heart.

Half of the five hundred disciples that followed Upatissa and Kotita felt so sad for their master that they came back to him.

When the two ascetics asked for the permission from the Buddha to be ordained as bhikkhus, the Buddha said, "Come here, bhikkhus." They became bhikkhus simultaneously. Kolita became an arahat after seven days of his arrival and Upatissa after fifteen days. Upatissa became the right hand chief disciple under the name of Sariputta who got the title of 'Etadagga'- "the Best One in Wisdom." Kolita became the left-hand chief disciple under the name of Mahā Moggallāna who got the title of 'Etadagga'- the Best One in Supernatural power.

### ***The Very First Congregation of the Saṃgha Order***

On the fullmoon day of Tapotwe (about February), 1250 Ehi bhikkhu arahats, who were endowed with the higher psychic power, gathered together at the Veluvana monastery. That was the very first Congregation of the Saṃgha Order. At this congregation the Venerable Sāriputta was conferred the position of the Right-hand Chief Disciple of the Buddha and the Venerable Mahā Moggallāna, the Left-hand Chief Disciple of the Buddha. According to the tradition of the former Buddhas, the Buddha admonished the bhikkhus, reciting the three

verses beginning with "**Khantī Paramam tapo titikkhā**, etc," meaning: "The best moral practice is patience and forberance," in the assembly of the Saṃgha Order.

## The Buddha's Journey To Kapilavatthu

### *Sending the Ministers*

The Buddha together with a great many of bhikkhu disciples was residing at the Veluvana Monastery in Rājagaha. As soon as the King Suddhodhana heard about that he sent a minister together with one thousand attendants to invite the Buddha to Kapilavatthu.

When the king's heralds arrived there, the Buddha was preaching the dhamma. They were listening to the dhamma behind the audience. At the end of the discourse, they all became arahats. Neither did they convey their message to the Buddha nor did they reply the message to the King as they all were absorbed in the blissful peace of Nibbāna.

Not receiving any reply, the king sent another minister with one thousand attendants. They also became arahats like previous ones and made no effort to reply any message to the king. In the same way, nine ministers and

their attendants became arahats. Finally, the king sent the most trustworthy minister, Kāḷudāyī, and one thousand attendants. He agreed to go on condition that he be allowed to enter the Order of Saṃgha. The king gave them his consent.

### ***Inviting the Buddha***

Kāḷudāyī and his followers also became arahats. He respectfully requested the Buddha to come and gratify his father as well as his relatives.

It was the pleasant and peaceful month of Tabaung (March); the weather was neither too cold nor too hot; withered leaves fell from trees and leafy shoots sprang up, grains and crops had just been harvested; roads were smooth and even and good for travel. Colourful flowers were also blooming along the roads. Venerable Kāḷudāyī composed and uttered sixty-four lyric verses describing the natural beauty of the surroundings and requested the Buddha to go to Kapilavatthu.

On the first waning day of Tabaung, the Buddha together with twenty thousand arahats left Rājagaha for Kapilavatthu. The distance

between these two countries was sixty yojanas (480 miles) and they went one yojana a day. So it took them two months to reach Kapilavatthu. Venerable Kāludāyi made his journey in the air by his higher psychic power and let the king know the Buddha's itinerary. On seeing him, the King was very pleased and felt delighted.

The king offered alms-food to Venerable Kāludāyi. He said to the king: "The alms-food should be offered not only to me but also to the Buddha." On hearing that the king felt more pleased and delighted and offered alms-food for the Buddha. Venerable Kāludāyi, informing the king where the Buddha and his disciples were, took the alms-food offered by the king to the Buddha daily. On the first waning day of Kason (May), the Buddha and his disciples arrived at Kapilavatthu.

### ***Inviting the Buddha to the Nigrodhārāma Monastery***

King Suddhodhana and his relatives made discussion to welcome the Buddha and his disciples. They decided that the Prince Nigrodha's park was suitable for the Buddha and his



disciples to reside because it was of good shade, of enough water, tranquil and neither too near nor too far from the city. The relatives, being well-dressed and holding fragrant flowers, heartily welcomed the Buddha and his disciples. They then invited them to the monastery in the Nigrodha park in a grand ceremony.

### ***Dispelling the Conceit of the Sakyan Princes***

The Sakyan elders were reluctant to pay homage to the Buddha who was of the age of their nephews and sons. Therefore, they put the Sakyan children nearer to the Buddha and they themselves sat at the back, without paying due respect to the Buddha.

The Buddha created the great jewelled walk in the sky to dispel the conceit of the Sakyan relatives and walked to and fro so as to display the miraculous powers of the Buddhas. The devas and brahmas from the ten thousand worlds came in mass and paid homage to the Buddha. While walking, the brilliant rays of white colour were emitted from the body of the Buddha. The rays were so brilliant that the whole universe was illuminated splendidly. When the audience was beholding the Buddha with great awe and veneration, the six hues such as

the brown hues from such parts of body as hair and eyebrow, the red hues from the red parts of body such as lips, palms and sole, the yellow hues from the fair complexion and the white hues from the white parts of body such as forty teeth including four eyeteeth and so on, were emitted continuously.

While human beings, the devas and brahmas were admiring the six hues in surprise, the Buddha repeatedly emanated the twin miracles: the flow of water from his right eye and the blaze of flame from the left. On seeing these miracles, the Sakyan elders became humble and paid homage heartily to the Buddha. Even though they paid homage again and again, they were not fully satisfied yet.

Then the king Suddhodana told the Buddha thus:

- (1) "Oh, Venerable Son! When I made you pay homage to my teacher, Kāladevīla recluse, on the very day when you were born, your two feet flew aloft and rested on the recluse's head. When I saw that I paid homage to you for the first time."
- (2) "On the day of the royal ploughing ceremony, you were put to sleep in the shade

of *Eugenia* tree. Though the time passed and the sun moved westward, the shade over you did not move at all. I found you sitting in meditation on breathing and well absorbed in the first Jhānic bliss. When I saw that I paid homage to you for the second time."

- (3) "Oh Venerable Son! Now I come to behold your miraculous power which I have never seen before. And so I pay homage to you for the third time."

### ***Narration of the Chronicle of the Buddhas***

While the Buddha was displaying various kinds of miracles to his relatives, Venerable Sāriputta was residing at Mount Gijjhakuṭa near Rājagaha together with his five hundred disciples. Venerable Sāriputta observed, with his divine eye, the miracles displayed by the Buddha.

At that moment a strong desire occurred in his mind to request the Buddha to narrate his life story so that men, devas and brahmas would understand how hard it was to become a Buddha, how involved it was to fulfil the ten perfections and how great the Buddha's power

was. Then he went to the Buddha through space together with his five hundred disciples.

He paid homage to the Buddha and requested him to narrate the chronicle of the Buddhas. Complying to the request, the Buddha narrated the chronicle of the Buddhas as he walked up and down in the jewelled passage created in the sky. During the narration all the twenty-thousand bhikkhus together with Venerable Sāriputta and his disciples remained in the sky near the Buddha listening respectfully to the narration. At the end of the narration, ten million lakhs of devas and brahmas became Arahats and countless numbers of people became Stream-winners, Once-returners and No-returners.

After the discourse, the Buddha descended from the jewelled passage and resided at the holy place of the Buddha among his relatives. At that moment Pokkharavassa rain fell wetting only those who wanted to be soaked. The audience was surprised and talked about that amazing rain. In connection to this event, the Buddha narrated the jāataka story of Vessantara.

***Going Alms-round in Kapilavatthu***

All the relatives returned home after hearing the discourse. Nobody invited the Buddha for alms-food in the next morning. Although King Suddhodana made a plan to offer the Buddha alms-food in his palace, he did not invite the Buddha. So in the next morning, the Buddha together with his disciples went round the city for collecting alms-food in the tradition of the former Buddhas. People looked in amazement and venerated the Buddha who was surrounded with six kinds of radiations emanating from his body. Yasodarā, Rāhula's mother, was watching the Buddha from her chamber and she saw him begging for food from house to house. So she was overwhelmed with grief. She also held her son in her arms and pointed to the Buddha saying, "That is your father!"

Yasodarā immediately went to the King and informed him about the Buddha going on alms-round. The King quickly went to the Buddha and told him that it was not proper for a royal prince to beg for food from house to house. The Buddha said that it was the traditional practice of all the former Buddhas to go on alms-round from house to house for collecting



alms-food. On hearing these words, the King became a Stream-winner. Then he took the alms-bowl from the Buddha and invited the Buddha and his disciples to the palace for alms-food.

All the royal relatives, except Yasodarā, gathered together. The Buddha, sitting on the well-prepared seat, preached that the practice of collecting alms-food from house to house was the right livelihood which brought great benefit in the present as well as in future existences. On hearing this account, the king became a Sakadāgāmi (Once - returner) and the queen Mahāpajāpati Gotamī became a Stream-winner.

### ***Going to Yasodarā's Chamber***

After taking alms-food, the Buddha, followed by Venerable Sāriputta and Venerable Mahāmoggallāna, went to Yasodarā's Chamber. The king also followed them, carrying the Buddha's alms-bowl. When Yasodarā saw the Buddha coming, she told her attendants to wear brown-coloured dress dyed with the barks of tree and to welcome and pay homage to the Buddha. The Buddha sat on the well-prepared place and told the King not to make any

disturbance to Yasodarā when she came to pay homage to him. Coming swiftly out of her Chamber, she clasped his feet in her hands, and placed her forehead on his instep. Then she could not utter a word and paid homage heartily to the Buddha with tears. When the king saw that scene, he became so emotional that he could not conceal the virtues of Yasodharā and said to the Buddha:

"My Revered Son, when my daughter heard that you were wearing the brown-coloured robe, she wore the same dress too. When she heard that you were taking one meal a day, she also did the same. When she heard that you did not use the luxurious beds, she slept only on a couch made of flat ropes. When she heard that you avoided garlands and scents, she did so. When her relatives sent messages to say that they would maintain her, she did not even look at a single one and she lay all her affection on you".

At the end of the King's words, the Buddha narrated the story of Candakinnrī Jātaka in honour of Yasodarā's great affection and fidelity.

## ***The Ordination of Younger Brother and Son***

On the third day of Buddha's arrival at Kapilavatthu, there were three ceremonies in the same day: the wedding ceremony of Prince Nanda and Janapadakalyānī, the consecration ceremony and the house warming ceremony. It was on the occasion of these three ceremonies that the Buddha visited the palace and took alms-food. After that the Buddha handed over his alms-bowl to the prince and gave the words of blessing. Then he went back to the monastery without taking his alms-bowl. The prince Nanda had to follow him carrying his alms-bowl. Janapadakalyānī appealed to the prince: "Please, come back quickly, my dear!" These words made Prince Nanda deeply moved. But he dared not return the alms-bowl to the Buddha. So he had to follow him unwillingly. When they reached the monastery Prince Nanda was ordained as a bhikkhu but he found no delight in bhikkhuhood. One day, the Buddha took him to the Tāvātimsa celestial realm. On the way they found a she-monkey in the forest. When they reached the Tāvātimsa celestial realm, the Buddha showed him beautiful angels. Then the Buddha asked him, "Who is more beautiful,

Janapadakalyāṇī or the angels?" He answered, "My Janapadakalyāṇī is just like the she-monkey which we found on the way." Then the Buddha asked whether he wished to get the angles. The prince gave a reply that he wanted to get them. The Buddha continued saying, "If you wish to get the angles, you should practise according to the Dhamma." Wishing to get the angles, Venerable Nanda kept on meditating and at last he became an arahat.

On the seventh day, when the Buddha went to the palace to take alms-food, Yasodarā made her seven-year-old son Rāhula well-dressed and sent him to the Buddha to ask for inheritance. The inheritance she meant was the four pots of gold lost on the day of the Bodhisatta's renunciation. These four pots of gold were included in the group of seven ones which appeared at the same time with the birth of the Bodhisatta. When the Buddha returned to the Nigrodhārāma monastery after having alms-food, Rāhula followed the Buddha grasping his robe and asking for the inheritance repeatedly. On reaching the monastery, the Buddha asked the Venerable Sāriputta to novitiate Rāhula saying that he should be giving the spiritual inheritance instead of the material one.

## ***Suddhodana's Worries for the Sakyan Dynasty***

On hearing of the novitiation of his grandson, King Suddhodana became worried and went to the Buddha hastily. He said to the Buddha thus: "My Revered Son, according to the Brahmins' prophesy, I wished to see you as the Universal Monarch. However, when you gave up the throne and renounced the world, I felt deeply lamented."

"When Prince Nanda was born, the Brahmins prophesied him just as they did to you. So I was relieved and expected him to succeed me. But when you ordained him, I was downhearted and terribly sorry again."

"Now, you have novitiated my dearest grandson, Rāhula, who will become the future Universal Monarch. Therefore, I cannot see my grandson enjoying the wealth of a Universal Monarch. The Sakyan Dynasty will be ruined," said the King in despair.

On the eighth day the King told the Buddha, "When one deva told me that you died while practising meditation, I did not believe his words". The Buddha replied, "You did not accept the words concerning my death



not only in the present time but also in some past existence". Emphasizing this fact, the Buddha narrated the story of Mahādharmapāla Jātaka. On hearing that, the king became a Non-returner. After that over one thousand Sakyan princes such as Bhaddiya, Anuruddhā, Ānanda, Bhagu, Kimila, Devadatta and the barber Upāli, etc., entered the order of bhikkhus, one group after another.

In the fifth year of his Enlightenment, five hundred Sakyan princesses led by Mahāpajāpati Gotami entered the order of bhikkhunīs. After that the other Sakyan princesses such as Yasodarā, Janapadakalyānī, Kisāgotamī, etc., followed suit. In this way, the Buddha's teaching flourished more and more with great momentum.

### ***Anāthapiṇḍika and Visākha***

During the life time of the Buddha, the population of Sāvatti, Kosala Country, was about seventy millions. Of these, fifty millions were Ariyas and the remaining twenty millions were worldlings. Anāthapiṇḍika and Visākha were the two wellknown upholders of the Buddha's teaching.

## ***Anāthapiṇḍika, the Donor of Jetavana Monastery***

Anāthapiṇḍika's family-name was Sudatta. He married Puñña Lakkhaṇā, the younger sister of Visāla, a wealthy man of Rājagaha. They had one son, Kāḷa, and three daughters: Mahā Subhaddā, Cūlasubhaddā and Sumanā. While the Buddha was spending the second rainy season at Rājagaha, Anāthapiṇḍika met the Buddha on his visit to Rājagaha. There he became a Stream-winner. He invited the Buddha to come and reside at Sāvatti.

Anāthapiṇḍika bought the Prince Jeta's garden which cost eighteen crores. There he built a great monastery known as Jetavana. The construction of many buildings including the fragrant Chamber (gandhakuṭi) was carried out by one thousand workers in six months. He spent eighteen crores to construct that monastery. After the monastery had been constructed, he invited the Buddha and held the splendid ceremony of pouring donation water. That ceremony also cost eighteen crores. He offered alms-food to two thousand bhikkhus daily.

On every sabbath day, all his servants had to observe eight moral precepts. Even the sucklings were not allowed to suckle in the

afternoon. Their mouths were sponged and they were given only electuary instead of milk. He donated altogether fifty-four crores for the welfare of the Buddha's Sāsanā (Buddha's Teaching).

At the houses of Anāthapiṇḍika and Visākha accomodation for one thousand bhikkhus each and four kinds of material requisites were always kept ready to be offered to bhikkhus whenever necessary.

### ***Visākha, the Donor of the Pubbārāma***

Visākha was the daughter of Dhanañjaya, the wealthy man from Sāketa, and the granddaughter of Menḍaka. She attained Sotāpatti Fruition at the age of seven. She was married to Puṇṇavaḍḍhana, the son of wealthy Migāra. Her father gave her an immensely valuable gem-encrusted cloak as a wedding present. That cloak was made of pure gold weighing one thousand nikkhas and it cost nine crores. When it was put on, it reached down to her instep. Her father gave her jewels and other properties. After giving admonition to her, he let her follow her husband to Sāvatti.

Although her father-in-law formerly was a firm follower of the Nigaṇṭha ascetic, her

attempt led him to take refuge in the Buddha. Therefore, she came to be known as Migāramātā, mother of Migarā. She lived up to a hundred and twenty years; but nobody could find any sign of ageing in her, and she looked young for ever.

One day when Visākhā went to the Jetavana Monastery to listen to the discourse of the Buddha, she took her cloak off at the entrance of the monastery and gave it to the maid to keep it. When they returned home after hearing the discourse, the maid left it at the monastery. The Venerable Ānanda found it and kept it. Visākha thought that her cloak should be donated to the bhikkhus. Although she decided to sell the bejewelled cloak, there was no one who could afford to buy it. So, she assessed the value of the cloak at nine crores. Then she had the Pubbārāma monastery built just as Anāthapiṇḍika built the Jetavana monastery in Sāvatti. It was in the eastern side of the city and fourteen acres wide. She paid nine crores for that patch of land. It took nine months to finish the construction which cost nine crores. She spent nine crores for the donation ceremony. Therefore, she donated altogether twenty-seven crores for the Buddha's

Sāsanā. On account of supporting Four Requisites to the Sāsanā, Anāthapiṇḍika was conferred the position of "Etadagga", the most Generous Male-lay-devotee in charity, and Visākhā, the position of "Etadagga", the Most Generous Female-lay-devotee in Charity.

The Buddha resided at the Jetavana monastery for nineteen years out of his forty-five years of Buddhahood. Therefore, most of his discourses were expounded at Jetavana. The Buddha resided at the Pubbārāma monastery for six years.

At whichever place he resided, the Buddha performed his daily routine-duties in five portions.

### ***The Buddha's Daily Routine***

"Buddho loke Samuppanno hitāya Sabbapāṇinam." For the welfare of all living beings, the Buddha appeared in this world. For his own sake, the Buddha could dwell in the blissful peace of Phalasamāpatti. Nevertheless, he could not live thus; he was always striving for the well-being of all living beings without taking a rest. The great compassion of the Buddha can be found clearly in his daily routine.



The Buddha, incessantly performed his daily duties in five portions:-early morning duty, afternoon duty, first watch of the night duty; middle watch of the night duty and last watch of the night duty.

### ***(A) Early Morning Duty***

At dawn, the Buddha got up, cleaned his face and limbs. Then he went back to his Fragrant Chamber and enjoyed the blissful peace of Phalasamāpatti for a little moment. At the time for alms-round, the Buddha prepared his robes and went for alms-round, sometimes alone and sometimes followed by his disciples. In his alms-round, he sometimes went with his supernatural power but sometimes in the natural way.

Wherever he went, the spikes, stumps and obstacles supernaturally disappeared out of his route and the rough and stony roads became automatically smooth and even too. Lay-devotees gathered together holding fragrant flowers to pay homage to the Buddha. They asked the Buddha to send his disciples for their alms-food as many as they could afford, i.e, ten bhikkhus or twenty bhikkhus or a hundred bhikkhus, etc....Then they carried the Buddha's alms-bowl, prepared the place well and offered him alms-food. After taking alms-food, the

Buddha observed the latent tendencies of the devotees, and preached the dhamma suitable to them. The Buddha returned to his monastery, sat at the prepared seat in the pavilion decorated with flowers and perfumes, and waited for his disciples who would return after their meals. When all the bhikkhus arrived, the Buddha went forth towards his chamber. This was his duty performed in every early morning.

### ***(B) Afternoon Duty***

After finishing his morning duty, he kept on performing his daily duties. After sitting at the well-prepared place near by his perfumed chamber, the Buddha washes his feet. While standing at the foot-washing slab, he admonished the bhikkhus, expounding the five Rare Occasions.

**"Appamādena Bhikkhave  
Sampādetha"**

***Oh, Bhikkhus! Strive on with diligence.***

***(1) Buddhuppādo dullabho lokasamim***

Rare to appear is the Enlightened one in the world.

(2) ***Manussattabhāvo dullabho***

Rare is it to be born as a human being.

(3) ***Dullabhā Saddhāsampatti***

Rare is it to be endowed with the conviction in the three Gems, Kamma and its result.

(4) ***Pabbajjitabhāvo dullabho***

Rare is it to attain the bhikkhuhood.

(5) ***Saddhammassavanamī dullabamī***

Rare is it to hear the teaching of the Buddha.

After exhortation thus to the bikkhus, the Buddha instructed the object of meditation suitable to the bhikkhus who supplicated him. Then the bhikkhus went forth towards their respective solitary places and practised meditation.

The Buddha, then, retired to his chamber and lied down on his right side for a little while if he wished. On rising, he surveyed the whole world whether there was any sentient being to be taught.

In the evening the lay-devotees from surrounding areas brought some drink, fragrant flowers and other offerings to him and waited to hear his discourse. Sitting at the noble place in the Dhamma pavillion, he expounded the

dhamma appropriate to the time and the situation. After the discourse the lay-devotees returned home.

### ***(C) The Duty of the First Watch***

If the Buddha wanted to bathe, he did so after a day's duty. The attendant-bhikkhu prepared a suitable place for the Buddha in the precinct of his Chamber. After taking a bath, the Buddha donned his inner robe, fastened the girdle and draped his outer robe, putting the corner of it on his left shoulder. He stayed solitarily there for a moment.

After a while, the bhikkhus from here and there assembled to pay homage to the Buddha. The Buddha answered all their questions and expounded the Dhamma for the whole first watch of the night.

### ***(D) The Duty of the Middle Watch***

The middle watch was exclusively reserved for devas and brahmas from ten thousand worlds. They approached to hear the Dhamma and to put up questions which they had previously pondered. The Buddha spent the whole midnight by solving all their problems and perplexities. Some Suttas, such as Maṅgala

Sutta and Parābhava Sutta, are those which were expounded during that watch.

### ***(E) The Duty of the Last Watch***

The Buddha divided the last watch into three parts and performed his duty accordingly. The Buddha spent the first part by walking up and down in order to relieve his physical tiredness.

At the second part, the Buddha retired to his Perfumed Chamber and slept mindfully for a while.

At the last part, he rose from the lying posture and sat cross-legged. He surveyed persons who had performed meritorious deeds, etc.... at the time of former Buddhas. Thus, the Buddha was occupied the whole day with his daily duties, scarcely taking a rest.

### ***His Selfless Service and Supreme Wisdom***

The Buddha performed his daily duties throughout the 45 years for the benefits of all sentient beings.

The Buddha surveyed the whole world once in the morning and once in the afternoon. If there was anyone to be taught the dhamma, he usually went there how far it might be.



The Buddha became the Supreme One who could render selfless services ever since he had attained the Arahattamaggañāṇa, the highest spiritual power which enabled one to eradicate defilements absolutely.

The Buddha became the Exalted One, who could perform for the welfare of others since he had attained the Sabbaññutañāṇa, the Omniscience-which enabled one to know whom, what and how to preach.

### ***The Buddha's Teachings***

Throughout the 45 years of his Buddhahood, the Buddha was incessantly striving for the well-being of all sentient beings, day by day, either in season or out of season. In the same way, the bhikkhus went to places, far or near, and preached the Dhamma to living beings.

All walks of life...such as kings, brahmins, wealthy men, traders, farmers, etc... irrespective of social classes, races, religions and castes, took refuge in the Buddha. Kings such as King Suddhodana of Kapilavatthu, King Bimbisāra of Rājagaha, Magadha Kingdom, King Kosala of Kosala Kingdom, etc... Jātīla, Upālī, Citta, Gosaka of Kosambi, Kukkuta and Pāvārika,

adhered to the Buddha's Teaching and supported the Teachings. Therefore, the Teaching of the Buddha spread and flourished well.

The Buddha, throughout his Missionary period of forty-five years, except the three months of rain-retreat, went to places of great distance, even two thousand yojanas afar, and dispelled the wrong views of all living beings. During the forty-five years, the Buddha spent his rain-retreat at the following places.

### ***The Places Where The Buddha Spent the Rain-Retreat***

Commencing from the very first day of attaining Buddhahood, on the fullmoon day of Kason (about May) in the year 103 Mahā Era (589 B.C.), the Buddha spent the rainy seasons (Vassa) at the following places:-

***1st rainy season*** in the Deer Park at Isipatana, Bārāṇasī;

***2nd, 3rd and 4th rainy season*** at Veḷuvana Monastery, Rājagaha;

***5th rainy season*** in Pinnacled Hall, Kutāgārasālā, at Great Forest Mahāvana, Vesālī;

***6th rainy season*** at Maḥula Hill;

- 7th rainy season** at Tāvatisa Celestial Realm;
- 8th rainy season** at Bhesakaḷa Deer Park, Saṃsumāra-giri, Bhagga Province;
- 9th rainy season** at Kosambi;
- 10th rainy season** at Pālileyka Grove;
- 11th rainy season** at Nāḷikārāma Monastery, Nāḷaka Brahmin Village;
- 12th rainy season** at the foot of Naḷeru Neem Tree, Veranḷa Province;
- 13th rainy season** at Cāliya Hill;
- 14th rainy season** at Jetavana Monastery, Sāvatti;
- 15th rainy season** at Nigrodhārāma Monastery, Kapilavatti;
- 16th rainy season** near Āḷavi;
- 17th rainy season** at Veḷuvana Monastery, Rājagaha;
- 18th, 19th rainy season** at Cāliya Hill;
- 20th rainy season** at Veḷuvana Monastery, Rājagaha;
- 21th to 38th rainy season** at Jetavana Monastery, Sāvatti;
- 39th to 44th rainy season** at Pubbārāma Monastery, Sāvatti; and
- 45th rainy season** at Veḷuva Village.

## The Evil Ones Who attacked the Buddha

Throughout the forty-five years of his Buddhahood, the Buddha taught the Four Noble Truths. All his discourses are profound and subtle. Whereas sentient beings have their minds corrupted by greed (lobha), anger (dosa), ignorance (moha), wrong view (diṭṭhi) and conceit (māna), there appeared some opponents who made several attacks against the Buddha. Among them, Māra, the Evil One, who wanted others to enjoy sensual pleasures, stood in the forefront. He prevented the Bodhisatta not to renounce the world, and not to attain the Buddhahood. Even though he had attained the Buddhahood, he also prevented him not to preach any discourse. So also he prevented him not to preach for a long time. Finally, he urged the Buddha to attain Mahāparinibbāna very early.

Apart from this, there were many such rivals as Brahmā Baka who firmly believed in immortal egoism; as Saccaka, wandering ascetic, who debated on the beliefs in a dialectical manner; and as the cruel ones like the murderer Aṅgulimāla, the ogre Ālavaka and the Gigantic Dragon, Nandopananda, who were very powerful in their respective spheres, raising the

banner of anger (dosa) and conceit (māna). They all fought against the Buddha, but all of them were defeated at last.

Devadatta was a cousin of the Buddha. So he thought that he himself was the one who deserved all the opportunities granted by the Buddha. But the Buddha gave the opportunities to other persons due to their accumulation of perfections (pāramīs). Thinking that the Buddha favoured others, he had grudge against the Buddha. When greed (lobha), anger (dosa), conceit (māna) and jealousy (issā), overwhelm, even a person who has attained the higher psychic power, he cannot see the truth, the natural law of kamma (Kammaniyāma).

Although Devadatta, with the help of King Ajātasatthu, repeatedly tried to kill the Buddha, he did not succeed. As a final assault he made the wild elephant, Nāḷāgiri, drunk so that it might trample the Buddha to death. But due to the incomparable power of the loving-kindness of the Buddha, his attempts were all in vain. Nevertheless, he would not entertain the righteous thought. Moreover, he himself pushed down a huge rock from the top of the Gijjhakuṭa Hill to kill the Buddha. Finally he organized five hundred young monks and declared himself the leader of the Saṃgha. How



cruel and foolish he was! After committing many gross offences successively, he felt remorseful. But his remorse could not save him. As he sowed, so he reaped.

When the Buddha appeared in the world, the leaders of heretics and their followers got less material gains and they rivalled and attacked the Buddha. But they were also defeated by the virtue of ten perfections and supernatural power. They did not give up either and made the female wandering ascetics, Sundarī and Cīñcamānavikā, accuse the Buddha of adultery in the midst of audience. By means of the accumulated perfections such as loving-kindness and patience, the Buddha won "eight glorious victories", overcoming all obstacles. In this world, there is no one who can overcome the Buddha. The Buddha is a peerless conqueror treading on the way of Dhamma. The followers of Dhamma have succeeded in everything.

### *The Four Competent Disciples*

When the Evil Māra insistently asked the Buddha to attain Mahāparinibbāna, the Buddha said thus: "Oh Māra! I shall not pass away so long as my disciples, namely, bhikkhus, bhikkhunīs, male devotees and female

devotees, are not yet well-versed in my Teaching, nor yet fully-practised, and nor yet able to expound the doctrine to others."

### ***The Buddha's Journey Before the Mahāparinibbāna***

Throughout the forty-five years of his Buddhahood, from the time of fulfilling the Perfections till the Mahāparinibbāna, the Buddha delivered the Dhamma. All the facts with regard to the time, the place, the person to whom and what kind of dhamma the Buddha preached, and what kind of people the Buddha came across, were completely recorded in detail. This is the specific characteristic of the Buddha and his Teachings.

At the 44th rain-retreat the Buddha resided at the Pubbārāma monastery in Sāvatti donated by Visākha. Then the Buddha and his disciples went to Rājagaha, the capital of Magadha. The Buddha and his disciples took up residence at the monastery on the Gijjhakūṭa Hill out of the eighteen monasteries in Rājagaha.

During that time, King Ajātasattu wanted to overcome the Vijjians without any bloodshed. The Buddha knew all about that and

gave the discourse on the ways of prosperity for kings and for bhikkhus as well.

In his discourse, the Buddha repeatedly exhorted the bhikkhus to establish the threefold trainings: morality (sīla), concentration (samādhi) and wisdom (paññā), in order to be liberated from suffering or saṃsāra. Indeed, the Buddha said so because the time for Mahāparinibbāna drew nearer.

### ***Dhamma-assemblies At Nāḷandā and Pāṭali Villages***

The Buddha left Gijjhakūṭa hill for Ambalaṭṭhika Grove and then proceeded to Nāḷandā, and stayed at the mango orchard of the rich man Pāvārika. There also, the Buddha again emphatically expounded only the three-fold training (sikkhā).

Then the Buddha, accompanied by many bhikkhus, went to the Pāṭali village, which would become the capital of Māgadha later. He arrived there in the evening and the villagers warmly welcomed and invited him to their guest-house. The villagers prepared the guest-house by covering the floor with lighting oil-lamps.

The Buddha sat at the well prepared place for him against the middle post of the guest house, facing eastwards. The bhikkhus sat behind the Buddha and the lay-devotees sat before him. Then the Buddha expounded the devotees of Pāṭali village the following five disadvantages of immorality:-

- (1) great loss of wealth;
- (2) ill reputation;
- (3) being timid and dejected among the audience;
- (4) dying in bewilderment; and
- (5) being reborn in the four miserable existences after death.

And then the Buddha expounded the advantages of the fulfilment of moral virtue and those of donating dwelling places to bhikkhus nearly the whole night

### ***From Koṭi Village To Vesālī***

Then the Buddha went to Koṭi village and expounded to the bhikkhus how the beings circled in the whirlpool of saṃsāra due to the lack of penetrative knowledge of the Four Noble Truths. And again he exhorted the bhikkhus to be endowed with threefold training.

Then the Buddha went to the Nāṭika village and stayed at a brick hall. During that time so many bhikkhus and lay-devotees of that village died consecutively that the Venerable Ānanda asked the Buddha about their next existences.

The Buddha said to Venerable Ānanda, "If the Tathāgata were to be asked about the next existence every time a person dies, it would only be tiresome for me. You must make it known by yourself." Then the Buddha delivered a discourse on the Mirror of Dhamma thus: "One, having firm belief in the three gems: the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha, and having observed five precepts, could be free from the four miserable existences and be assured of a good destination. The Buddha also exhorted the bhikkhus to be endowed with the threefold training (sikkhā).

Then the Buddha and his bhikkhus left Nāṭika village for Vesālī, and stayed at Ambapālī's mango grove. She invited the Buddha to accept her offering of alms-food on the next day.

Ambapālī was such a beautiful woman that the Buddha, in advance, admonished his



followers and discoursed on the four foundations of mindfulness.

When the Licchavi princes, who came in pomp and ceremony, paid homage to the Buddha, the Buddha said to his disciples, "Let those bhikkhus who have never seen the Tāvatisa devas, have a good look at the assembly of the Licchavis." The Buddha said so because he saw the royal possessions of Licchavi princes would be ruined by King Ajātasattu very soon. The Buddha also instructed the disciples to contemplate on the characteristic of impermanence and said that the royal wealth and luxuries, like the water bubble, lasted just for a little moment. The Buddha again exhorted his bhikkhus to be endowed with the threefold training.

### *The Last Journey of the Buddha*

While the Buddha was going to Veluva Village from Vesāli, the time to enter the rain-retreat was drawing near. The Buddha permitted his bhikkhus, except Venerable Ānanda, to go and spend their rain-retreat in the vicinities of Vesāli.

Venerable Ānanda was the Buddha's close attendant who was so wise and intelligent that

he could bear all the Buddha's teachings in his mind without missing a word by his excellent power of mindfulness, wisdom and effort. At that time, he was only in the first stage of nobility; i.e. he was a Stream-winner (sotāpanna).

### ***Mutual Expectations Between the Buddha and his Disciples***

While the Buddha was residing at the small village of Veluva at his 45th rain-retreat, he suffered from deadly serious illness. The Buddha thought that it would not be proper for him to pass away without telling and admonishing the bhikkhus. Therefore, the Buddha maintained his life by the power of experiencing the bliss of Arahatsip and he became healthy again. When Venrable Ānanda saw the Buddha in his deadly serious illness, he became shocked and was unable to practise meditation.

When the Buddha recovered from his illness, the Venerable Ānanda got somewhat relieved considering that the Buddha would not pass away without giving any special instruction to the Order of Bhikkhus. So he approached the Buddha and said, "Your Venerable Sir! Now I get relieved to see that the Buddha becomes healthy again." Then the

Buddha replied: "Ānandā! Why does the Order of Bhikkhus still expect from me to live longer? The Tathāgata has already taught all the Teaching without a closed fist of a teacher. The Tathāgata has no desire that he alone should lead the Order of Bhikkhus, or that the Order of bhikkhus should depend on him alone. You yourselves must be your own refuge, you yourselves should depend on the island of Dhamma, but not on anything else."

The Buddha did not confer any authority to any person nor take delight in personal worship. The Buddha had repeatedly reminded the bhikkhus to rely only on the Dhamma.

### ***The Demise of the Two Chief Disciples***

The time when the Buddha left Veluva Village for Jetavana monastery in Sāvatti was about the 8th waxing day of the month of Tazaungmon (about November). At that time most of the venerable ones such as Venerable Koṇḍañña, the Buddha's son Reverend Rāhulā, Yasodharā Theri, the Buddha's aunt Gotamī, etc, had already attained parinibbāna. The Buddha's right-hand disciple, Venerable Sāriputta,

asked permission from the Buddha to attain parinibbāna. Then Venerable Sāriputta went to Nālaka Village in order to teach Dhamma to his mother, Rūpasārī. She was not yet a devotee of the Buddha.

After converting his mother, he attained parinibbāna on the fullmoon day of Tazaungmon. Venerable Cunda, the young brother of Venerable Sāriputta, took the bowl, the robe and the relics of Venerable Sāriputta and offered them to the Buddha. When the Buddha praised the virtues of Sāriputta reciting five hundred verses, Venerable Ānanda could not help weeping severely. The Buddha consoled him by teaching the impermanence of conditioned things. A stupa was built in Sāvatti enshrining the Venerable Sāriputta's relics.

Then the Buddha went to Rājagaha. On the waning day of Tazaungmon, his left - hand chief disciple, Venerable Moggallāna, attained parinibbāna on the brown ruby-coloured stoneslab, Kāḷasilā, on Isigili hill in Rājagaha. A stupa was built at the entrance of the Veluvana monastery and the Buddha himself enshrined the Venerable Moggallāna's relics in that stupa.

The devas and the brahmas paid homage to the relics of the two chief disciples for

the last time. As the two great disciples of the Teacher attained parinibbāna in the same year, it had been very tragic and regretful to the worldlings for the two chief disciples of the Buddha had passed away in the same month.

On the full-moon day of Nattaw (about December), the Buddha, accompanied by the Bhikkhus, went to the city of Ukkacela in Vijji country. There, the Buddha looked at the gathering of bhikkhus who were silent and remorseful, in remembrance of the passing away of two chief disciples, their two elder brothers and addressed them thus: "Oh Bhikkhus! whatsoever has arisen, all that must inevitably perish. Be ye islands unto yourselves. Be ye a refuge to yourselves. Seek no external refuge. Live with the Dhamma as your island. The Dhamma is your refuge." And then the Buddha expounded the doctrine of four foundations of mindfulness.

### ***Releasing the Power of Sustaining Vitality***

Then the Buddha went to the pleasant city of Vesālī, a beautiful land of many shrines and stupas. While residing at the Cāpāla Shrine, the Buddha told Venerable Ānanda, "Ānanda,



whosoever fully develops the four bases of Psychic Power, Iddhipāda, can live the maximum life-span, or even beyond the maximum life-span. The Buddha said these words three times. But the Venerable Ānanda did not understand. So he did not beseech the Buddha in such words as, "Venerable Sir, may the Buddha live the maximum life-span for the welfare of the sentient beings!" Then the Buddha asked Ānanda to stay away.

At that time the evil Māra who knew all about that situation, approached the Buddha and persuaded him to attain parinibbāna. The Buddha replied thus: "You, evil Māra, don't worry about this matter. Three months from today, the Tathāgata will attain parinibbāna." The Buddha was eighty years old at that time. That means that he had lived the four-fifths of the life-span. It is the traditions of all former Buddhas to attain Parinibbāna after they had lived four-fifths of their life-spans.

After that, the Buddha released the power of sustaining vitality. He did not make any further effort to live longer. No sooner did the Buddha release the power of sustaining vitality than the earth trembled violently and roarings of thunder burst forth continuously.

Venerable Ānanda asked the Buddha about the cause of the great earthquake and the roarings of thunder. On knowing the true course of such a terrible earthquake, he appealed to the Buddha to live the whole of his life-span. The Buddha answered, "Ānanda, your request is too late. I have given you plain hints and intimations for three times; but you did not entreat me. This is your own fault, your own remissness."

When Venerable Ānanda was attending the Buddha with a dejected mind, the Buddha consoled him, by admonishing him with the discourse on the separation from the beloved and the nature of arising and passing away of conditioned things.

Then the Buddha went to the pinnacled hall in the Mahāvana forest in Vesāli. While residing there, the Buddha made Venerable Ānanda go and summon all the bhikkhus living in Vesāli to come and assemble at the pinnacled hall. Then the Buddha exhorted the bhikkhus to learn and practise the doctrines he had given so that the teachings would endure long and remain established for a long time.

Then the Buddha said to the bhikkhus thus: "O Bhikkhus, three months from this day,

the Tathāgata will attain Mahāparinibbāna. The Tathāgata has only a little time to live. I shall have to depart from you. Vigilantly and mindfully strive to be endowed with morality (sīla), concentration (samādhi) and wisdom (paññā)!"

In the early morning of the next day, the Buddha went into Vesali for alms-round. Before leaving Vesālī, the Buddha looked back towards Vesālī and said to Venerable Ananda thus: "Ānanda, this is the last time for the Tathāgata to look at the city of Vesālī".

Then the Buddha went through the Villages of Bhaṇḍa, Hatthi, Amba and Jambu one after another and thence to the town of Bhoga. At Ananda Shrine of Bhoga town, the Buddha gave the discourse on the four Great Authorities, Mahā-padesa, and then he repeatedly expounded to be endowed with threefold training.

### ***Suffering from a Severe Attack of Dysentery***

Then the Buddha together with a large company of bhikkhus left Bhoga for Pāvā, and stayed at the mango-grove of the goldsmith, Cunda. In the next morning, the Buddha accepted the alms-rice with tender pork offered

by Cunda. And then the Buddha told Cunda not to offer it to the bhikkhus and to bury all the remainings in the ground. On that day, the Buddha excruciatingly suffered from a severe attack of dysentery with the discharge of blood.

The Buddha had to suffer from the severe attack not because of the tender pork but because of the consequence of an evil deed in his past existence. He was able to resist the severe attack by taking this food. Thus, the Buddha said that the food offered by Sujātā on the day of his Full-Enlightenment and the food offered by Cunda were of equal benefit.

Even though he was suffering from severe dysentery with the discharge of blood, the Buddha went on his journey to Kusināra. It was the hot season and the heat of the sun in Kason (May) was terribly intense. The Buddha felt exhausted. When they got to a big tree near a small stream, the Buddha asked Venerable Ānanda to fold his double-layered robe and place it on the ground. He felt thirsty and asked Ānanda to get drinking water from the stream. Venerable Ānanda replied to him that five hundred carts had just crossed the stream and the water was so turbid and muddy that it would not be good to drink; and also

supplicated him to drink and bathe only when they arrived at the Kakudhā River.

But the Buddha said, "Go and fetch the water". When Venerable Ānanda went and fetched it, he found the water clean, pure and cool. So he came to know that the supernormal glory of the Buddha was very great and marvellous.

And then, after taking a bath at the Kakudhā River, the Buddha donned the fine golden robe donated by Pakkusa, the Malla Prince. The golden hue of the robe matched well with the Buddha's clear and radiant complexion. That indeed was the last glorious sublimity of the Buddha!

Then from the top of the Kakudhā river bank the Buddha went to the mango tree. He could not wait for Venerable Ānanda who was washing and wringing the robes, and he asked Venerable Cunda to spread his double-layered robe on the ground. He lay down on the robe.

Although the town of Kusināra was about three leagues (about 6 miles) away from Pāvā, the Buddha felt so weary that he had to stop and rest for twenty-five times on the way.



### *The Last Day of the Buddha*

The Buddha, the Supreme Being of the three worlds, went into the Sal Grove of the Malla princes which is situated at the road-band leading to the entrance of Kusināra town. At the Sal Grove, the Buddha said thus:

"Ānanda, lay out the couch with its head to the north between the twin Sal trees. I am tired. I shall lie down". When the couch was ready, the Buddha lay down on his right side.

At that time the Sal trees completely burst forth in bloom out of season. The fragrant sal flowers scattered all over the body of the Buddha. Celestial flowers and sandalwood powder fell from the sky over sacred body. Celestial musical sounds filled the air as a token of reverence to the Buddha. Many devas and brahmas from the ten thousand world systems gathered around the Buddha to pay their last homage to him.

The Buddha sent Venerable Ānanda to the Malla princes to report about the Parinibbāna of the Buddha.

When Venerable Ānanda appeared before the Malla princes, they were convening

the People's Assembly and when they heard the words of Ānanda, they were overwhelmed with great despair and they cried bitterly. They quickly gathered their families and went to pay homage to the Buddha group by group.

### ***The Last Disciple of the Buddha***

At that time Subhadda, a wandering ascetic, was in Kusināra and he heard that the Buddha would attain the Mahāparinibbāna in the last watch of that night. So he tried to approach the Buddha to ask some questions to dispel his doubts about the Doctrine. But Venerable Ānanda prevented him from seeing the Buddha three times. When the Buddha overheard the conversation between Venerable Ānanda and the wandering ascetic, the Buddha told Venerable Ānanda to allow Subhadda to see him.

The wandering ascetic Subhadda asked the Buddha whether the leaders of heretics such as Pūraṇa Kassapa, Makkhaligosaḷa and so on, were real Buddhas as they had claimed. The Buddha told the ascetic to set aside that question and to listen to him.

"Subhadda, I shall expound the Doctrine to you. Listen to me and bear it well in mind.

In the teachings in which the Noble Eightfold Path is not expounded, there cannot be found the first-stage Ariya, the second-stage Ariya, the third-stage Ariya and the fourth-stage Ariya (Noble Persons). In the teaching in which the Noble Eightfold Path has been expounded, all the Four Ariyas can exist. In my Teaching the Noble Eight fold path has been expounded. So in this Teaching only, the Four Noble persons can be found. All the other teachings, being void of Ariyas, are futile. So long as the bhikkhus live well practising the teachings themselves and teaching others righteously, the world will not be deplete of Arahats."

The wandering ascetic Subhadda was well satisfied with the clearcut exposition of the Buddha and requested to be ordained as a bhikkhu. After becoming a bhikkhu, he practised the Noble Eightfold Path and soon became an Arahāt. He was the last disciple to become an Arahāt in the presence of the Buddha. In fact the reason why the Buddha made the last journey of over six miles from Pāvā to Kusināra under the extreme hot weather, inspite of his severe illness, resting twenty-five times on the way, was threefold, namely, to straighten the view of Subhadda, to teach Mahāsudassana

Sutta and to have his relics distributed to eight kings peacefully by the brahmin Doṇa.

Thus, the Buddha performed his daily routine consistently and energetically without fail up to the last moment for the welfare and happiness of all beings. How great the Buddha's compassion was!

### ***The Last Words of the Buddha***

Then referring to his bhikkhu who had assembled silently, the Buddha said, "Ānanda, when the Tathāgata passes away, you may consider that you have no teacher. Don't consider this way. The Doctrine and the Discipline I have taught and laid down to all of you will be your teacher when I pass away."

And the Buddha added, "Bhikkhus, if any of you should happen to have any doubt or perplexity regarding the Buddha, the Dhamma, the Saṃgha, the Path, or the Practice, ask me now. Do not let yourselves feel regret later for not asking me. Do not hesitate to ask questions."

All the bhikkhus remained silent and no one asked any question.

This event finally proved beyond doubt that the Buddha's Discourses were true and

genuine. Then the Buddha paused for a short moment and gave his last words to the bhikkhus as follows:

*"Handa dāni bhikkhave āmañtayami vo  
vayadhammā sañkhārā appamādena  
sampādetha"*

"Oh Bhikkhus! These are my last words now. All conditioned and compounded things have the nature of decay and disintegration. With steadfast mindfulness, endeavour diligently for your own liberation."

### ***The Buddha's Mahāparinibbāna***

The whole Sal grove was in deep silence. The full moon of Kason (Vesākha) was about to set in the west and the small hours of the next day began. There was no more voice of the Buddha to be heard.

Some bhikkhus, men, devas and brahmas, who were Non-returners and Arahats paid their last homage to the Buddha, reflecting and contemplating on the nature of Dhamma. Some bhikkhus, men, devas and brahmas, who were ordinary worldlings, Stream-winners, and Once-returners, wept and lamented silently.

The Buddha with his eyes closed, entered the First Jhāna, then the second Jhāna



and so on till Nevasaññānāsaññyā-yatana Jhāna. Then from that Jhāna, he came down step by step up to first Jhāna. And again from the first Jhāna he went up step by step to the fourth Jhāna and passed into Parinibbāna.

It was in the early summer morning past the midnight of the full-moon day of Vesākha (Kason), on Tuesday, in the year 148 Mahā Era, that the Buddha attained Parinibbāna. At that moment the earth trembled violently and thunder-roars with flashes of lightning appeared in the sky. The whole world seemed to be plunged into deep darkness.

### ***The Arrival of Venerable Mahākassapa***

The Malla Prince of Kusinārā spent the whole week in paying homage and reverence to the sacred body of the Buddha with flowers, perfumes and musical performances. At that time Venerable Mahākassapa together with five hundred bhikkhus was on the way from Pāvā to Kusinārā. When they learnt of the Buddha's Parinibbāna, the bhikkhus who were not free from defilements wept vehemently. Then one of the bhikkhus, Subhadda, who had become a bhikkhu in his old age after leading a married

life, said to other bhikkhus, "Friends, do not grieve and do not weep. Now we are free from the hands of the great Samaṇa Gotama who has oppressed us by saying, "This is proper for you; that is not proper for you! From now on, we can do what we like."

On hearing those words, Venerable Mahākassapa was struck with awe and he thought to himself: "Only seven days have passed since the Buddha's Parinibbāna. Now a great obstacle endangering the Buddha's Teaching has arisen. Before the enemy to the Teachings get stronger, the Buddha's Teachings should be kept well in order. Just like the scattering flowers which have not yet been made into a beautiful garland, so also the Buddha's teachings given throughout the forty-five years have not yet been grouped into similarities and classified in systematic ways. It is proper that after the cremation of the Buddha's sacred body, these teachings should be recited together in the Saṃgha Assembly as soon as possible."

The Malla princes moved the Buddha's body from the Sal grove to the royal place where the auspicious ceremony of wearing the top-knot (hair) was held by Malla Princes. And when they tried to kindle the funeral pyre, they

were unable to set it on fire. On the seventh day Venerable Mahākassapa and his disciples arrived at the scene. They circled the funeral pyre three times with clasped hands raised to their forehead. Then they paid obeisance to the Buddha by touching the feet of the Buddha with their forehead. At that very moment, the funeral pyre burst into flames spontaneously.

### *The Distribution of The Sacred Relics*

After the spontaneous cremation of the Buddha's body, the relics left behind were collected and venerated in ceremony for a whole week. Meanwhile, the seven Kings from seven countries, such as Rājagaha, Vesālī, Kapilavatthu. etc., heard about the Parinibbāna of the Buddha and marched towards Kusināra with their respective armies in order to get their share of the relics. Due to the persuasion of the Brahmin Doṇa, who had been the revered teacher of the seven kings and the Malla princes, the relics were divided into eight equal portions and distributed among the Malla princes and the eight kingdoms. These kings and princes enshrined the relics in Thūpas for public reverence in their respective countries.

The first Buddhist Council was held in Rājagaha by five hundred arahats headed by Mahā Kassapa under the sponsorship of King Ajātasatthu. After the Council, Venerable Mahākassapa, foreseeing the danger to the Buddha's relics, advised the King Ajātasattu to keep them in safety in a single place in Rājagaha. Then employing his supernormal power, Venerable Mahākassapa collected all the relics and placed them in a safe place in Rājagaha.

When the third Buddhist Council was held in the year 235 Buddhist Era, the Great Emperor Āsoka asked the head of the Saṃgha, Venerable Mahāmoggaliputtatissa, the numerical extent of the Buddha's teachings. The Mahā Thera answered that the Buddha's teachings consist of 84000 dhammakkhandhas (dhamma-groups). In veneration to the Buddha's Teachings, he ordered his ministers to build 84000 monasteries and 84000 thūpas in 84000 towns. The Mahā Thera obtained the Buddha's relics from Rājagaha and let the emperor enshrine them in the thupas he had built.



.....



.....



## CHAPTER (3)

### *Paying Homage*

#### *How to pay homage*

When a Buddhist approaches to pay homage to the Buddha and members of the Saṃgha, he must take a suitable place putting his palms together on his forehead respectfully. The suitable place should be free from six faults of location: being too far; being too near, being at the front; being at the back; being at a high place; and being against the wind. Then he should supplicate something what he wishes. After that, he should pay homage to them and go back from them taking four or five steps backward and with joined- palms on his forehead, without turning his back to them.



### ***Three modes of paying homage***

- (a) Paying homage physically  
(kāyavandanā);
- (b) Paying homage verbally  
(vacīvandanā); and
- (c) Paying homage mentally  
(Manovandanā).

### ***Paying homage physically***

One who pays homage physically to the Buddha and the Saṃgha has to touch the ground or the floor with five parts of one's body. These five parts of body are: forehead, two hands and two knees. This is called the five-fold manner of touch.

### ***Paying homage while standing***

When a Buddhist meets the members of the Saṃgha on the way, he should stop his stepping, take off his head-wear and shoes. Then he should raise his joined-palms on his forehead with his body leaning forwards.

### ***Paying homage while sitting***

A male-devotee should sit in a squatting posture and a female-devotee should sit with

limbs drawn together for paying homage by means of the fivefold manner of touch. While paying homage he or she should say as follows:

***Buddham Pujemi*** = I pay homage to the Buddha.

***Dhammam Pujemi*** = I pay homage to the Dhamma.

***Samgham Pujemi*** = I pay homage to the Samgha.

### ***The Programme for Performing Religious Activities***

When the Buddhists in Myanmar perform the meritorious deeds such as giving charity, observing the precepts, etc., they first pay homage to the Samgha by reciting the formula of asking for permission to do so beginning with "Okāsa". At the end of the recitation, beginning with Okāsa, a member of the Samgha gives blessings so that the wishes of the devotees may be fulfilled.

Then the devotees ask for the five or eight precepts together with threefold refuges by reciting the Pāli word beginning with "Aham bhante". The member of the Samgha then

dictates the formulae of *Namotassa*, and *Saraṇagamana* Pāḷi words for paying homage to the Buddha.

After the devotees recite the above Pāḷi formulae, the member of the Saṃgha reminded them to keep the precepts well with mindfulness.

After that the devotees hand over the offertories to the Saṃgha. Then the member of the Saṃgha may deliver a short discourse on the benefits of giving charity and keeping precepts. He then administers the pouring of libation water and sharing merits.

### ***The Formula of Asking for Permission***

**Okāsa Okāsa Okāsa** - Oh Venerable Sir: May I pay obeisance to thee! So as to be free from all my offences, accumulated from evil deeds done physically, verbally and mentally, I pay homage to the Three Gems: the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha, once, twice, thrice with my joined-palms on my forehead very respectfully and humbly. Owing to my deeds of merit, may I always be free from the four Apāyas, the three kappas, the eight Aṭṭhakkhaṇas,

the five Veras, the four Vipattis, the five Byasanas; and at the final existence may I attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna!

### ***The meanings of the formula of asking for permission***

**Okāsa** = asking for permission

**Kāyakamma** = physical commitment

**Vacīkamma** = verbal commitment

**Manokamma** = mental commitment

**Sabba dosa** = all offences

### ***Ratanā***

*Ratanā* means all animate and inanimate things which give delight and pleasure to one's mind.

All jewels including diamond, gold, silver, etc., give delight and pleasure to the mind for people in the world. So they are called mundane jewels (Lokīya Ratanā).

Similary, the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha give delight and pleasure to the mind for human beings, devas and brahmas. So, they are called supramundane jewels (Lokuttarā Ratanā).

### ***The Four Nether Worlds (Apāyas)***

The four states which are devoid of happiness are called Apāya. There are four apāyas. They are:-

- (1) The Realm of intense continuous suffering (Niraya);
- (2) The State of animals; (Tiracchāna)
- (3) The Realm of ever hungry beings (Peta); and
- (4) The State of a kind of petas who live miserably in secluded places (Asurākāya).

### ***Three Disasters***

***Kappa:*** destroying is called Kappa.

Three disasters which arise when the world is overwhelmed by evil deeds are called three kappas.

They are:-

- (1) The disaster by famine  
(*Dubbhikkhantara Kappa*);
- (2) The disaster by weapons  
(*Satthantara Kappa*);
- (3) The disaster by epidemic  
(*Rogantara Kappa*);



### ***The Causes of the Disasters***

- (1) The disaster by famine arises when human beings are overwhelmed by greed.
- (2) The disaster by weapons arises when human beings are overwhelmed by hatred.
- (3) The disaster by epidemic appears when human beings are overwhelmed by ignorance.

### ***Eight Inopportune Times***

- (1) Being born in the Niraya,
- (2) Being born as animals (*Tiricchāna*),
- (3) Being born as petas (*Peta*),
- (4) Being born as Asaññatta-brahmas and Arūpa-brahmas. (As they have no faculty to hear the Dhamma, they cannot listen to the Noble Dhamma.)
- (5) Being born as a human being in the remote part of a country which cannot be reached by Buddha and his disciples. (*Paccantarika*)
- (6) Being born as a human being having the wrong view during the time of the Buddha and his Teachings.

- (7) Being born as a human being with no intelligence to understand the teachings of the Buddha.
- (8) Being born as a human being with adequate intelligence to understand the teachings of the Buddha but not in the time of the Buddha.

### ***The Five Enemies (Pañca Verāṇi)***

- (1) floods,
- (2) Conflagrations,
- (3) Bad rulers,
- (4) Thieves and robbers, and
- (5) Bad sons and daughters who are unworthy heirs. These five are called *enemies* because they can sometimes cause a great danger to unfortunate human beings.

### ***Four Deficiencies (Vipatti)***

*Vipatti* means the state of being short of what is needed. Four vipattis are:

- (1) Being the time of bad rulers;  
(Kālavipatti),
- (2) Being born in four miserable existences (Gativipatti),

- (3) Having physical deformities and disfigurements (*Upadhivipatti*), and
- (4) Being lack of right effort (*Payogavipatti*).

### ***Five Kinds of Losses (Byasana)***

***Byasana*** means the ruination or misfortune. Five byasanas are:

- (1) Loss of relatives (*Ñāti-byasana*),
- (2) Loss of wealth (*Bhoga-byasana*),
- (3) Loss of health due to illness (*Roga-byasana*),
- (4) Loss of right view (*Diṭṭhi-byasana*),
- (5) Loss of morality (*Sila-byasana*).

***Magga***: *Magga* means the Path leading to the Nibbāna.

There are four stages:

- (1) The Path of Stream-winner (*Sotapatti-magga*),
- (2) The Path of once-returner (*Sakadāgāmi-magga*),
- (3) The Path of Non-returner (*Anāgāmi-magga*),
- (4) The Path of Arahant (*Arahatta-magga*).

**Phala:** Phala means the fruition that immediately follows the path. There are also four stages:

- (1) The fruition of Stream-winner (*Sotapatti-phala*),
- (2) The fruition of Once-returner (*Sakadāgāmi-phala*),
- (3) The fruition of Non-returner (*Anāgāmi-phala*),
- (4) The fruition of Arahāt (*Arahattaphala*).

**Nibbāna:** Nibbāna is the extinction of fire of lust, hatred and delusion.

### ***The Story of the Youth Āyuvaḍḍhana***

While residing in a village monastery near Dīghalaṅghika, the Buddha spoke this verse, with reference to Āyuvaḍḍhanakumāra.

Once, there were two hermits who lived together practicing religious austerties for forty-eight years. Later, one of the two left the hermit life and got married. After a son was born, the family visited the old hermit and paid obeisance to him. To the parents the hermit said, "May you live long." But he said nothing to the child. The parents were puzzled and

asked the hermit the reason for his silence towards the child. The hermit told them that the child would live only seven more days and that he did not know to prevent his death. However he added that the Buddha might know how to do it.

So the parents took the child to the Buddha. When they paid obeisance to the Buddha, he also said "May you live long" to the parents only and not to the child. The Buddha also predicted the impending death of the child. To prevent his death, the parents were told to build a pavilion at the entrance to the house and put the child on a couch in the pavilion. Then some monks were sent there to recite the parittās (protective chants) for seven days. On the seventh day the Buddha himself came to that pavilion; the evil spirit Avaruddhaka was at the entrance, waiting for a chance to take the child away. But as more powerful devas arrived, the evil spirit had to step back and make room for them so that he had to stay at a place two leagues away from the child. That whole night recitation of parittās continued, thus protecting the child. The next day, the child was taken from the couch and made to pay obeisance to the Buddha. This time, the Buddha said "May you live long" to the child.



When asked how long the child would live, the Buddha replied that he would live up to one hundred and twenty years. So the child was named Āyuvadḍhana.

When the child grew up, he went about the country with a company of five hundred fellow devotees. One day, they came to the Jetavana Monastery and the monks, recognizing him, asked the Buddha. "For beings, is there any means of gaining longevity?" To this question the Buddha answered, "By respecting and honouring the elders and those who are wise and virtuous, one would gain not only longevity, but also beauty, happiness and strength."

### ***"The Story of a Monk who reviled an Ariya"***

Once an elder monk and a young monk went for alms in a certain village. At the very first house they got a ladleful of warm gruel each. The elder monk was suffering from severe pain in the stomach. He thought: "This gruel is beneficial to me. I will drink it before it gets cold." And he sat down on a log brought by men for the purpose of making a door-post, and drank the gruel. The other monk, being disgusted with him, thought: "This old

man, being oppressed by excessive hunger, has done something we should be ashamed of". Having roamed around the village, the elder monk went back to the monastery and asked the young monk: "Friend, have you made a foothold in this religion?" "Yes, sir. I am a Stream-winner." "Friend, then do not try for the higher Path. You have reviled one who is free from cankers". The young monk apologized so that his fault was condoned.

All beings in the world have to live with the Buddha, the Saṃgha, noble persons, parents, teachers and those who are older and superior in virtues. One may offend them bodily, verbally or mentally. Whether one may commit the wrong action intentionally or not, one may encounter the evil consequences such as loss of properties, suffering from various diseases, etc., in this very life. Also in future existences, one may be reborn in woeful abodes repeatedly and one's chance to attain the celestial life and Nibbāna may be blocked. Therefore one must be very careful not to offend noble persons and elders.

In order to deter the 'above evil consequences, the wise elders of past generations have adopted the formula of asking for

permission ("Okāsa") to be performed first among the religious activities.

By reciting the Okāsa Formula in obeisance to noble persons and elders, all the evil consequences of intentional or unintentional offences may be eradicated, and good benefits will arise in this life as well as in future lives. Even if no offence has been done, one will gain wholesome Kammās by paying homage with Okāsa, and will enjoy the benefits of these Kammās.

## Moral Precepts

### *Asking for the Five Precepts*

*"Ahaṃ bhante tisaraṇena saha pañcasīlaṃ dhammaṃ yācāmi anuggahaṃ katvā sīlaṃ detha me bhante.*

*Dutiyampi* - Ahaṃ, bante tisaraṇena saha pañcasīlaṃ dhammaṃ yācāmi anuggahaṃ katvā sīlaṃ detha me bhante."

*Tatiyampi* - Ahaṃ bante tisaraṇena saha pañcasīlaṃ dhammaṃ yācāmi anuggahaṃ katvā sīlaṃ detha me bhante."

*Bhikkhu* - Ya-mahaṃ vadāmi taṃ vedetha."

*Lay devotees* - Āma bhante.

**Note :** It is not necessary to recite "Āma bhate" if one observes the precept in front of the Buddha image.

**Meaning -**

Venerable sir, I observe the five precepts together with the threefold refuge.

Venerable sir, please help me observe the five precepts out of compassion for me.

*Bhikkhu* - Repeat after me as I say.

*Lay devotees* - Yes, Venerable Sir.

### ***The Formula of Paying Homage to the Buddha***

*Pāli word* - Namō Tassa Bhagavato Arahato sammāsambuddhassa (three times)

**Meaning** - Veneration to the Exalted One, the One worthy of special veneration, and the perfectly self-enlightened One.

### ***Taking three Refuges***

*Pāli word* - Buddhāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi  
Dhammāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi  
Saṃghāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi

*Dutiyampi*            Buddhamaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi  
*Dutiyampi*            Dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi  
*Dutiyampi*            Saṃghaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi

*Tatiyampi*            Buddhamaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi  
*Tatiyampi*            Dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi  
*Tatiyampi*            Saṃghaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi

*Bhikkhu*            - Saraṇagamanamaṃ paripuṇṇamaṃ  
*Lay devotees* - Āma bhante

**Meaning**        - I take refuge in the Buddha.  
                               I take refuge in the Dhamma.  
                               I take refuge in the Saṃgha.

For the second time I take refuge in the Buddha.

For the second time I take refuge in the Dhamma.

For the second time I take refuge in the Saṃgha.

For the third time I take refuge in the Buddha.

For the third time I take refuge in the Dhamma.

For the third time I take refuge in the Saṃgha.



*Bhikkhu* - you have now completed the act of taking three refuges.

*Lay devotees* - Yes, Venerable Sir.

**Note :** It is not necessary to recite "Āma bhante" if one takes the three refuges in front of the Buddha image.

### ***Undertaking the Five Precepts***

***How to establish and observe the five precepts (In Pāḷi and English rendering)***

#### ***In pāḷi***

- (1) Pāṇātipātā verāmaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (2) Adinnādānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (3) Kāmesumicchācārā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (4) Surāmerayamajja pamā daṭṭhānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.

#### ***Meaning***

- (1) I observe the precept of abstaining from killing any living beings.

- (2) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking what is not given by the owner.
- (3) I observe the precept of abstaining from committing sexual misconduct.
- (4) I observe the precept of abstaining from telling lies.
- (5) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking any intoxicant or drug that causes forgetfulness.

*Bhikkhu* ; Tisaraṇena saha pañcasīlam  
dhammamī sādhuḥkaṁ katvā  
appamādena sampādeṭha.

Do observe the five precepts together with the Three Refuges with diligence and steadfast mindfulness.

*Lay-devotees*: Āma bhante.

Yes, Venerable Sir.

### **"Meaning of Saraṇagamana"**

The Pāḷi word 'Saraṇagamana' means the solemn recognition of the Three Refuges as the holiest objects of worship because they can ward off danger, bring good benefits, eliminate suffering and deliver happiness.

## ***Existence and Disappearance of Saraṇagamaṇa***

One can establish Saraṇagamaṇa by reciting "*Buddham saraṇam gacchāmi, Dhammam saraṇam gacchāmi, Saṃgham saraṇam gacchāmi*" in front of a monk, a Buddha image or a pagoda recognizing solemnly the Three Refuges as the holiest objects of worship. So long as one is alive or one is not converted to another system of belief, the Saraṇagamaṇa will remain in oneself and it will ward off danger, bring good benefits, eliminate suffering and deliver happiness. When one dies or when one is converted to another system of belief, the Saraṇagamaṇa completely disappears in one.

### ***The Benefits of Saraṇagamaṇa***

- (1) Those who can maintain Saraṇagamaṇa till death, will not be reborn in lower abodes when they die.
- (2) They will be reborn as human beings or celestial beings.
- (3) They will surpass others in the following ten virtues:
  1. in enjoying visible objects,

2. in enjoying pleasant sounds,
3. in enjoying sweet odours,
4. in enjoying good taste,
5. in enjoying pleasant contact,
6. in enjoying a long life,
7. in enjoying good appearance,
8. in enjoying happiness,
9. in enjoying power, and
10. in enjoying the number of companions.

In the world the Three Gems are the most superior. If one takes refuge in Three Gems, he will gain such advantages as long life, good appearance, etc. If one misconceives the Three Gems, he cannot attain Magga and Phala and he will be reborn in niraya.

### ***The Story of Saraṇagamana Thera***

In the time of Anomadhassī Buddha, there lived a man who looked upon his blind parents in the town of Candavati. He contemplated that all beings were being burned by the three fires of lust, anger and delusion and that a man who wished to perform meritorious deeds, should be able to liberate himself from these fires. As he had to look after his blind

parents, he could not become a monk. So, he undertook three refuges from Reverend Nisabha who was the chief disciple of Anomadassī Buddha. He maintained the three refuges till the end of his life-span which lasted for 100 thousand years at that time.

He was then reborn in the Tāvātimsa celestial abode. He was born as the King of devas for 80 times, as the universal monarch for 75 times, as ordinary human-king and ordinary deva-king for innumerable times. He was never reborn in the four lower abodes. In every existence he was honoured wherever he went; he had great intelligence and great retinue; he enjoyed great wealth; he possessed fair complexion and good appearance; he was loved by others; he had stable and good friends; his reputation spread in all directions. Finally, he was reborn as a rich-man's son in Savatthi. At the age of seven, he was playing with his companions when they happened to be in a monastery and met an arahat. That arahat admonished them kindly and let them undertake three refuges. As soon as the rich man's son heard the word "Tisarāṇa", he recalled the saraṇagamaṇa which he had maintained in the time of Anomadassī Buddha. At that moment, he attained the arahatship at the very young age of seven.



## The Story of a Wood-cutter and his son

It was the time under the reign of King Bimbisāra in Rājagaha, At that time there lived two boys, who were friends. One of them was the son of a holder of right view while the other was the son of a holder of the wrong view.

They used to play a game of balls. The first boy always won the game, and the latter learnt that the former recited "*Namobuddhassa*" (I pay homage to the Buddha) whenever he threw the ball. So the second boy also recited "*Namobudḍhassa*" most of the time.

One day, the second boy accompanied his father who went into the wood to cut some firewood. On their return home in the evening, they stopped near a cemetery to have their meal. They also took off the yoke from the two oxen to enable them to graze nearby. But the two oxen went away without being noticed. As soon as they knew that the two oxen were missing, the wood-cutter went to look for them, leaving his son with the cart of fire-wood. The father entered the town, looking for his two oxen.

When he returned with the two oxen, it was too late for the city-gate was already closed. Therefore, the young boy had to spend the night alone under the cart. That night two ogres came by the cart as they looked for food. Of the two ogres, one was a right viewer while the other was a wrong viewer. The wrong-viewed ogre wanted to eat the boy as soon as he saw the boy. The right-viewed ogre stopped him, but the latter went ahead pulling the leg of the boy. The boy was awoken and he suddenly cried out "*Namobuddhassa*" as he was used to saying it very often. The ogres got frightened and stepped back. The right-viewed ogre said that as they had done something wrong to the boy, they must look after to the boy to undo their actions. As he looked after the boy, his friend went to the palace of Bimbisāra and brought some food with the royal bowl. The two ogres then fed the boy as if they were his parents. Then they left a written message on the royal bowl, and they went away at dawn.

In the morning the king's men noticed that the royal bowl was missing and they went around looking for it. When they found it on

the cart of the wood-cutter, they brought the bowl together with the boy to the king. The king saw the message on the bowl and realized that a strange event had happened. When the boy's parents arrived at the palace, the King took them to the Buddha. He presented the facts that he knew to the Buddha and asked the Exalted One what had happened. The Buddha told the King the whole story. The King realized that the boy's mindfulness of the Buddha had saved the boy from being eaten by the ogres. The Buddha explained the benefits of mindfulness on the virtues of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha to them. At the end of the explanation the boy and his parents became Stream-winners.

### **The Consequences of Breaking or Observing the Five Precepts**

#### ***The Consequences of Killing Sentient Beings***

Whosoever kills any living being will be reborn in one of the four lower abodes after death. Even when he is freed from there and is again reborn as a man, he will encounter the following evil consequences:-

- (1) Having physical deformities and disfigurements,
- (2) Being ugly,
- (3) Being pale and feeble,
- (4) Being dull and inactive,
- (5) Being easily frightened when confronted with danger,
- (6) Being killed by other or facing death in youth,
- (7) Suffering from many diseases,
- (8) Having few friends, and
- (9) Being separated from beloved ones.

On the other hand the one who abstains from killing sentient beings will enjoy the benefits which are the opposite of the above consequences.

### ***The Consequences of Stealing***

Stealing includes taking other's things without asking for the permission of the owner, and taking other's properties by force or by cheating or by trick. Whosoever commits stealing will be reborn in one of the four lower abodes when he dies. Even when he is freed from there and is again reborn as a man, he will encounter the following evil consequences:-

- (1) Being poor,
- (2) Having to bodily and mental suffering,
- (3) Being tortured by hunger and starvation,
- (4) Having unfulfilled wishes,
- (5) Having unstable and easily perishable fortune,
- (6) Having properties destroyed by the five enemies, namely flood, fire, thieves, bad inheritors and bad rulers.

On the other hand the one who abstains from stealing will enjoy the benefits which are the opposite of the above consequences.

### ***The Consequences of Sexual Misconduct***

Whosoever has sexual relation with any person other than one's spouse is said to have committed sexual misconduct. That person will be reborn in one of the lower abodes when he dies. Even if he is freed from there and is again reborn as a human being, he will encounter the following evil consequences:-

- (1) Being disgusted by others,
- (2) Having many enemies,



- (3) Lacking of wealth and prosperity,
- (4) Being deprived of happiness,
- (5) Being reborn as a woman,
- (6) Being reborn as a sexual pervert,
- (7) Being reborn in the inferior lineage,
- (8) encountering disgrace,
- (9) Having physical deformities,
- (10) Being separated from beloved ones,
- (11) Being inflicted with the loss of wealth.

On the other hand, the one who abstains from sexual misconduct, will enjoy the benefits which are the opposite of the above consequences.

### ***The Consequences of Telling Lies***

Telling what is not true by gesture or by words with malicious intention is committing the action of falsehood. The gravity of that offence corresponds to the amount of harm done on others. The liar will have to suffer in the miserable realms after his death. If he were to be reborn in the human world he will be afflicted with the following defects:

- (1) poor pronunciation,
- (2) uneven teeth,
- (3) foul breath,
- (4) unhealthy complexion,

- (5) poor eyesight and poor hearing,
- (6) defective appearance,
- (7) lack of influence on others,
- (8) harshness of speech, and
- (9) restlessness of the mind.

On the other hand the one who abstains from telling lies will enjoy the benefits which are the opposite of the above consequences.

### ***The Consequences of Indulging in Intoxicants***

Intoxicants and narcotic drugs such as alcoholic, liquors, opium, cocaine and heroin are addictive. Consuming any of these leads to the drunkenness, forgetfulness and lack of common sense. These in turn lead to murder, lying and adultery, etc. Moreover the user of intoxicants or narcotic drugs will enjoy poor health, die young and will be reborn in woeful abodes.

Even when he is freed from there and is again reborn as a human being, he will encounter the following evil consequences;

- (1) lack of intelligence,
- (2) being lazy,
- (3) lack of mindfulness,
- (4) being ungrateful,

- (5) lack of moral shame and moral dread;
- (6) insanity, and
- (7) tendency to commit all evil deeds.

On the other hand he who abstains from consuming intoxicants will enjoy the benefits which are the opposite of the above evil consequences.

## **The Stories Demonstrating the Evil Consequences of Breaking Precepts**

### ***The Story Illustrating the Consequences Of Killing Sentient Beings***

Once upon a time a housewife went to the market to buy meat in order to feast a special guest. As she could not get meat from any place, she killed a little sheep which was bred in her house. The guest and her husband were very satisfied with the meat. But when she died she was cast into hell where she had to suffer for a long time. After that she was born as an animal as many times as the number of hair on the little sheep she had killed. In every animal life she was killed being cut at the throat as she had killed the little sheep.

### ***The Story Illustrating the Consequences of Stealing Other's Properties***

Once upon a time, four women in Rājagaha amassed riches through malpractice of shortchanging and adulteration in selling their goods. They died in their prime life and became petas, miserable beings, outside the city. At night they entered the city looking for scattered food remnants or saliva or phlegm spat out by human beings. As they went along one street after another they came to their former houses and saw their husbands enjoying with new wives. They felt so painful that they cried out, "We have been suffering miserably for having amassed wealth unlawfully while our husbands are enjoying to their heart's content with their new wives."

### ***The Story Illustrating the Consequences of Committing Adultery***

Ānanda, the younger brother of Gotama Buddha, fulfilled the ten perfections for a hundred thousand worlds. In one of his lives in this world, he became a rich goldsmith's son. In this life he associated with bad companions and committed adultery several times.

When he died he was cast into Roruva Hell where he was tortured for many years. After that he was born as a monkey who had its genital bitten off as soon as it was born. After that life, he was born as a goat and then as a calf which were castrated when they grew up. In the next existence he regained the human life but was born as a sexual pervert. After that he attained celestial existences as female deities for five lives with the support of wholesome kamma, but he did not attain malehood because of the unwholesome kamma of committing adultery. Then he was born as Princess Rucā in the human realm. Only after that, he regained manhood.

### ***The Story Illustrating the Consequences of Falsehood***

In the time of Kassapa Buddha, in Kimila, there lived a male lay-devotee who was a Stream-winner. He did the meritorious deeds of planting trees, building bridges and monasteries, etc., with his five hundred followers who were of the same view. This group of lay-devotees went to the Buddha's monastery frequently to listen to the Dhamma. Their



wives also went to the monastery occasionally to listen to the Dhamma and to make offerings.

One day some drunkards saw them and were attracted by them. They argued among themselves as to who would be able to destroy the morality of those women. One of them said that he would be able to do so. This man tried to seduce the wife of the leader of the lay devotees in many ways and finally succeeded.

The drunkard who lost the bet informed the leader of the lay devotees about the matter. And the latter asked his wife whether she had committed adultery. She lied that what he had heard was not true. As her husband did not believe her, she pointed to a black dog nearby whose ears were cut off and swore: "If I have committed adultery with another man, may I be eaten by this black dog in the next life." Still, her husband did not believe her and he inquired her companions. Although her companions knew the truth, they also swore: "We do not know. If this is not true, may we become her slaves."

When they died, they all became miserable beings near the lake Kaṇṇamunda in the Himavanta Forest. Because of their meritorious deeds in their past lives, they enjoyed the celestial luxury in a very grand golden mansion

in the day time. But at night the leader of the group, in accordance with her swearing to her Streem-winner husband, she was eaten by a black dog. Her five hundred companions also became her servants as they had sworn in lie in their past lives. Moreover, although they could enjoy the luxury of devas they did not get married. They felt lonely and boring for being apart from men.

Falsehood is the greatest demeritorious deed while truthfulness is the most beneficial meritorious deed.

### ***The Story Illustrating the Consequences of Indulging in Intoxicants***

Once the Bodhisatta was born in a wealthy family possessing eighty crores of silver coins. He performed the meritorious deeds of giving charity and keeping good morality. When he died, he was reborn as Sakka, the king of devas, in Tavatimsā.

His son squandered the wealth left behind by him indulging in intoxicants. When the son had used up the forty crores of silver coins, he dug up the forty crores buried under ground. He built a liquor house and led an easy life associating with drunkards and

indulging in intoxicants. When he was drunk, he let acrobats and dancers entertain them and presented one thousand silver coins to each.

Soon he had spent all the money and was reduced to a poor beggar. Finally he died miserably.

*The Story Illustrating  
the Consequences of Keeping  
the Five Precepts*

*The Story of Dhammapāla*

Once in a village in Kāsi Province, all the villagers gave charity, maintained good morality and kept sabbath on sabbath day. Consequently they never died young; they usually died in their old age.

The son of the headman in that village went to study at Takkasilā City. While he was studying there, a young son of the professor died. The young Dhammapāla inquired why the professor's son died young. The others asked him: "Don't you know that everyone must die one day either in the early age or in the old age? Doesn't anyone die young in your village?" The young Dhammapāla replied, "Of course, they die, but they never die young."

When the professor heard the strange words of the young Dhammapāla, he was surprised and he wanted to find out what the young Dhammapāla said was true or not. So he left the youth to look over his pupils while he himself went to the Dhammapāla village, taking along some bones of a goat. On reaching there, he went to Dhammapāla's father, and, showing the bones, said, "Your son Dhammapāla has passed away and has been cremated. Here are his bones."

His father and other relatives replied, laughing: "These bones cannot be my son's. They must be the bones of a goat or a dog." "Although every man is subjected to death at any age, why are you an exception to this rule?" asked the professor.

The headman explained thus: "Here in our village of Dhammapāla, all the villagers usually give charity and keep the precepts; we abstain from all evil deeds. Besides the youths usually obey the elders. We all perform voluntary work for the welfare of our community. Thus no one dies young in our village."

Then the professor paid obeisance to the headman and admitted: "Your son doesn't die. I came here to inquire the truthfulness of your son's remark that no one dies young in this

village." The professor inquired about the meritorious deeds performed by the Dhammapāla villagers in further detail and returned home.

### ***The Pāḷi for Asking for the Eight Moral Precepts***

*Lay devotee:* Ahaṃ bhaṇte tisaraṇena saha  
aṭṭhaṅga samannāgatam uposatha  
sīlam dhammam yācāmi  
anuggaham katvā sīlam detha me  
bhaṇte.

Dutiyampi ahaṃ bhante tisaraṇena  
saha aṭṭhaṅga samannāgatam  
uposatha sīlam dhammam yācāmi  
anuggaham katavā sīlam detha  
me bhante.

Tatiyampi ahaṃ bhante tisaraṇena  
saha ... me bhante.

***Bhikkhu*** : ya' maham vadāmi tam vadetha.

***Lay devotee*** : Āma bhante.

***Note*** : If we ask for the eight Sabbath\_precepts in front of the image of the Buddha, it is not necessary to recite "Āma bhante".



**Meaning:**

Venerable Sir, I observe the eight Sabbath\_precepts together with the Three Refuges. Please grant me the eight Sabbath\_percepts out of compassion.

**Bhikkhu :** I will recite the following. Do repeat after me.

**Lay Devotee:** Yes, Venerable Sir.

**In Pāli :** Namo tassa bhagavato arahato  
sammasambuddhassa (To recite  
three times)

**In English:** Veneration to the Exalted One, the  
One worthy of special veneration  
and the Perfectly self-enlightened  
One.

**Taking Three Refuges**

**In Pāli :** Buddhāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi.

Dhammāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi.

Samghāṃ saraṇāṃ gacchāmi.

Dutiyampi      Buddhāṃ      saraṇāṃ  
gacchāmi.

Dutiyam pi Dhammam saraṇam  
gacchāmi.

Dutiyam pi Saṃgham saraṇam  
gacchāmi.

Tatīyam pi Buddham saraṇam  
gacchāmi.

Tatīyam pi Dhammam saraṇam  
gacchāmi.

Tatīyam pi Saṃgham saraṇam  
gacchāmi.

***Bhikkhu*** : Tisaranagamanam paripuṇṇam.

***Lay devotee*** : Āma bhante.

***In English*** - I take refuge in the Buddha.

I take refuge in the Dhamma.

I take refuge in the Saṃgha.

For the second time, I take refuge in the  
Buddha.

For the second time, I take refuge in the  
Dhamma.

For the second time, I take refuge in the  
Saṃgha.

For the third time, I take refuge in the Buddha.

For the third time, I take refuge in the Dhamma.

For the third time, I take refuge in the  
Saṃgha.

**Bhikkhu** : You have now completed the act of taking refuge.

**Lay devotee** : Yes, Venerable Sir.

## ***Undertaking the Eight Moral Precepts***

### ***In Pāli:***

- (1) Pāṇatipātā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (2) Adinnādānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (3) Abrahmacariyā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (4) Musāvādā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (5) Surāmerayamajjapamādaṭṭhānā veramanisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (6) Vikālabhojanā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (7) Nacca gīta vādita visūka dassana mālāgandha vilepana dhārana maṇḍana vibhūsanatṭhānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (8) Uccāsayana mahāsayanā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.

## Meaning

- (1) I observe the precept of abstaining from killing any living being.
- (2) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking what is not given by the owner.
- (3) I observe the precept of abstaining from indulging in sexual conduct.
- (4) I observe the precept of abstaining from telling lies.
- (5) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking any intoxicant or drug which causes forgetfulness.
- (6) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking any food after mid-day.
- (7) I observe the precept of abstaining from enjoying dancing, singing, playing musical instruments which are obstacles to the Noble Practice and also abstaining from wearing flowers, using perfumes and beautifying with any cosmetics.
- (8) I observe the precept of abstaining from staying on any high or luxurious seat or bed.

## ***In Pāḷi***

***Bhikkhu*** : Tisaraṇena saha aṭṭhaṅgasamannāgataṃ uposathasilamī dhammamī sadhukamī katvā appamādena sampādeṭha.

***Lay devotee***; Āma bhante.

## ***Meaning***

***Bhikkhu*** : Do observe the Eight Sabbath-precepts together with the Three Refuges with diligence and steadfast mindfulness.

***Lay devotee*** : Yes, Venerable Sir.

## ***The Meaning of Abrahmacariya***

In the observation of the five precepts, one has to abstain from sexual misconduct. In the observation of the eight moral precepts, one has to abstain from the ignoble practice (abrahmacariya) instead. The ignoble practice (abrahmacariya) means indulgence in sexual conduct between man and woman. 'Sexual conduct' is the English rendering of the Myanmar word *Methun*, '*Methuna*' in Pāḷi. '*Methuna*' means 'the affair of two persons'. So any kind of sexual behaviour between any two persons is the "ignoble practice".



As to the sexual misconduct (kāmesumicchācāra), one may indulge in sex with one's own wife or husband. On the other hand, as to the ignoble practice (abrahmacariya), one is not permitted to have sex with one's own spouse and one has to abstain from any form of sexual enjoyment.

### ***The Meaning of Vikālabhojana***

Vikālabhojana means taking food at a wrong time. Here, the time from 12 noon to sunrise of the next day is considered to be the wrong time for a person who observes the uposathasīla. He must not have any solid food such as rice, curry sandwich, cake, jam and fruits, etc. In order to drive away and relieve hunger and weakness he may take fruit juice made from mango, banana, lime, lemon, tamarind, plum, pineapple, or orange, jaggery, brown slab-sugar, molasses and sugar may be also taken by dissolving them in water. Electuary may be taken as medicine whenever required.

### ***(7) The Meaning of Nacca, gīta, etc.***

Nacca = dancing; making others to dance.

gīta = singing; making others to sing.  
vādita = playing musical instruments;  
making others to play musical  
instruments.

visuka dassana = visuka + danssana.

visuka = what is contradictory  
to the Noble Practice.

dassana = seeing or listening to  
any entertainment.

One's precepts will not be broken if one  
sees the dancing or hears the singing by coin-  
cidence, without making any effort to do so.

mālā = various kinds of flowers

dhāraṇa = wearing or using

gaṇḍha = scented powder or scented  
lotion

maṇḍana = applying

vilepana = dyeing or beautifying with  
lip-stick, rouge, eyeshadow,  
etc.

vibhusana = making the skin beautiful  
and fragrant

ṭhāna = the cause of increasing  
defilements

The person who observes the precepts should  
not beautify himself before observing the pre-  
cepts.

### ***(8) The Meaning of Uccāsayana and Mahāsayana***

Uccāsayana = high places mean high couches or seats having legs longer than one cubit and a half, i.e. 27 inches.

Mahāsayana = luxurious places mean the seat or bed stuffed with cotton, wool or kapok, carpet or fur longer than four finger-breadths (about two inches), carpets decorated with the pictures of tiger, lion, leopard and silk bedsheet, decorated with silver or gold embroidery.

### **The Nine Sabbath-Precepts**

#### ***Undertaking the Nine Sabbath-Precepts***

Some Buddhists, on sabbath days, observe the Nine Sabbath-precepts instead of the Eight Sabbath-precepts. In reality the Nine Sabbath-precepts are the same as the Eight Sabbath-precepts plus undertaking the meditation on loving-kindness, which is taken as the ninth precept. It is undertaken to enhance the benefits of keeping the Sabbath.

## ***In Pāḷi***

Ahaṃ bhante tisaraṇeṇa saha navaṇ-  
gasamannāgataṃ uposathasīlaṃ dhammaṃ yācāmi  
anuggahaṃ katvā sīlaṃ detha mebhante

Dutiyampi ahaṃ bhante - - - - - detha mebhante.

Tatiyampi ahaṃ bhante - - - - - detha mebhante.

***Bhikkhu*** : Ya maham vadāmi taṃ vedetha.

***Lay devotee*** : Āma bhante.

## ***Meaning***

***Lay devotee*** : Venerable Sir, I observe the nine Sabbath- precepts together with the Three Gems. Please grant me the nine Sabbath-precepts out of compassion.

***Bhikkhu*** : I will recite the followings. Do Repeat after me.

***Lay devotee*** : Yes, Venerable Sir.

## ***Formula for Paying Homage to the Buddha***

Namo tassa bhagavato arahato  
sammāsambuddhassa. (Recite three times)

Buddham saraṇam gacchāmi.

Dhammam saraṇam gacchāmi.

Sangham saraṇam gacchāmi.

Dutiyampi Buddham saraṇam gacchāmi.

" Dhammam saraṇam gacchāmi.

" Saṃgham saraṇam gacchāmi.

Tatīyampi Buddham saraṇam gacchāmi.

" Dhammam saraṇam gacchāmi.

" Saṃgham saraṇam gacchāmi.

**Bhikkhu** : Tisaraṇa gaṇanam paripuṇṇam

**Lay devotee** : Āma bhante.

## The Nine Precepts

### In Pāli

- (1) Pānātipātā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (2) Adinnādānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (3) Abrahmacariyā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (4) Musāvādā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (5) Surāmerayamajjapamādaṭṭhānā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (6) Vikālabhojanā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.
- (7) Nacca gīta vādita visukkha dasana mālāgandha vilepana dhārana maṇḍana vibhūsaṇaṭṭhanā veramaṇisikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.



(8) Uceāsayana mahāsayanā veramani  
sikkhāpadam samādiyāmi.

(9) Mettā sahagatena cetasā  
sabbapāṇabhūtesu pharitvā viharanam  
samādiyāmi.

**Meaning:**

- (1) I observe the precept of abstaining from killing any living beings.
- (2) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking what is not given by the owner.
- (3) I observe the precept of abstaining from indulging in sexual conduct.
- (4) I observe the precept of abstaining from telling lies.
- (5) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking any intoxicant or drug which causes forgetfulness.
- (6) I observe the precept of abstaining from taking any food after mid-day.
- (7) I observe the precept of abstaining from enjoying dancing, singing and playing musical instruments which are obstracles to the Noble Practice, and also abstaining from wearing flowers, using perfumes and beautifying with any cosmetics.

- (8) I observe the precept of abstaining from staying on any high or luxurious seat or bed.
- (9) I do establish the practice of cultivating loving-kindness on all living beings.

### ***In Pāli***

***Bhikkhu*** : Tisaraṇena saha navaṅga sammānāgataṃ Uposathasīlamā dhammāṃ sadhukāṃ katvā appamādena Sampādeṭṭha.

***Lay devotee*** : Āma bhaṇṭe.

### ***Meaning :***

***Bhikkhu*** : Do observe the Nine Sabbath precepts together with the Three Pefuges with diligence and steadfast mindfulness.

***Lay devotee*** : Yes, Venerable Sir.

### ***The Practice Of Cultivating Loving-kindness.***

According to Navaka ṇipāta of Aṅguttara Nikāya, if one promises to observe the precept of cultivating loving-kindness towards all living beings in addition to the eight Sabbath-precepts, one is said to observe the nine Sabbath-

precepts. Loving-kindness (*mettā*), however, is not a precept like the eight Sabbath-precepts. The reason is that one cannot send forth loving-kindness to others the whole day though one can refrain from taking the life of other creatures the whole day. Loving-kindness is something to be cultivated in one's own mind.

In the Buddha's time some persons observed the nine Sabbath precepts for radiating loving-kindness to others as it is very beneficial. It is generally accepted that if one diffuses loving-kindness to other sentient beings, without reciting "*mettāsaḥagatena cetasā*," after establishing the eight Sabbath-precepts, he is said to undertake the nine Sabbath-precepts.

### **The Sabbath-precepts (Uposatha Sīla)**

"Uposatha" itself is a combination of two words "upa" and "vāsatha." "Upa" means "fully engaged with the good practice like not taking other's life, etc; and "vāsatha" means living or dwelling. The Eight or Nine Sabbath precepts is called the Sabbath Precepts since the person who observes these precepts has to specially strive for completion of maintaining these precepts.

In Buddhism, to keep sabbath is to keep one's mind pure by repeatedly contemplating the virtues of the Buddha, the Dhamma or the Saṃgha in order to keep one's mind pure, i.e. free from defilements.

### ***The Procedure of Observing Sabbath-precepts***

- (1) On the day on which one is going to observe the Sabbath- precepts, one should clean oneself, wear clean clothes and keep one's mind pure since one gets up from bed.
- (2) Neither should one use perfume and cosmetics nor wear flowers nor beautify oneself in advance. One must restrain from any kind of beautifying oneself which contradicts to the Sabbath-precepts.
- (3) One should undertake the precepts as early as possible.
- (4) After undertaking the precepts one should contemplate the virtues of the Buddha, the Dhamma or the Saṃgha or any kind of meditation at a quiet place.
- (5) If one cannot meditate for a long time, one should read or recite the Teachings of the Buddha.

- (6) One should listen to the discourse if there is someone to expound, or discuss the discourse.
- (7) At night fall, one should feel delighted reflecting how one has spent the day fulfilling Morality, Concentration and Wisdom.

### ***The Duration of Observing the Sabbath-precepts***

One may undertake to abide by the precepts either for a certain period or for the whole life. One should at least keep observing the precepts from the time one has undertaken the precepts till the dawn of the next day.

## **The Stories Illustrating the Benefits of Observing the Sabbath-precepts**

### ***The Story of Gaṅgāmāla***

Once upon a time, during the reign of King Brahmadattha in Bārānasi, there was a wealthy man called Suciparivāra, who possessed eighty crores of silver coins. That wealthy man and his wife kept the Sabbath-precepts six days in a month. Every servant in their house-



hold also did the same. At that time, the Bodhisatta was born in a poor family, and when he grew up he worked for that wealthy man. On one Sabbath day, the Bodhisatta went to work as usual without knowing that it was a sabbath day. When he came back at sunset, he found out that others were observing the Sabbath-precepts. So he asked for permission from the wealthy man to allow him to observe the Sabbath-precepts for the rest of the day. At night, he suffered from severe stomach pain due to flatulence since he kept the Sabbath-precepts without taking any food for the whole day.

At dawn the pain became more severe and he fainted. At the mean time the king of Bārānasi happened to go round the town. The Bodhisatta saw the great wealth of the king and, longing to be a king, he passed away. Then he was conceived in the womb of the king's queen as the result of keeping the Sabbath-precepts for a half-day. When he was born, he was named Udayakumāra. When he came of age he became a famous king of Bārānasi.

### ***The Story of Uposathā***

In the City of Sāketa, there was a female lay-devotee named Uposathā. She was endowed with conviction and morality. She supported the Saṃgha with four main requisites. She usually observed the Eight Sabbath-precepts on Sabbath days. She frequently listened to the discourses delivered by the Buddha and his disciples, practised meditation, and soon she became a Stream-winner. Moreover, she longed to live at the Nandavana Garden in Tavatimsā celestial abode since she came to know from some discourses that the Nandavana Garden was very pleasant and enjoyable. So she longed to be in that garden.

Because of this desire, she was reborn in Tavatimsā as a goddess, named Uposathā, in the Nandavana Garden.

The Buddha said: "A person with morality, because he has a pure mind, will get his desire fulfilled whatever he sets his mind on." This is so because a moral person has a pure volition which, together with his strong will, will fulfil his desire whatever he wishes for.

### *The Five Advantages of Endowment in Morality*

In the Mahāparinibbāna sutta, the Buddha expounded to the devotees of Pāṭali Village that a man of virtue can gain the five advantages that can be attained by a virtuous person as follows.

"Householders, five are the advantages of the fulfilment of virtue obtained by the virtuous. What are these five advantages? In this world, householders, one, virtuous, endowed with virtue, acquires much wealth chiefly owing to the effect of non-negligence. This is the first advantage of the fulfilment of virtue by the virtuous. Again, householders, of one, virtuous, endowed with virtue, a good report is noised abroad. This is second advantage of the fulfilment of virtue by the virtuous. Again, householders, to whatsoever assembly one, virtuous, endowed with virtue, goes, he enters boldly and unperturbed, whether it be an assembly of princes, an assembly of brahmins, an assembly of laymen, or an assembly of monks. This is the third advantage of the fulfilment of virtue by the virtuous. Again, householders, one, virtuous, endowed with virtue, dies undeluded. This is the fourth advantage of the

fulfilment of virtue by the virtuous. Again, householders, one virtuous, endowed with virtue, on the dissolution of the body after death, reaches a happy destiny, a heavenly world. This is the fifth advantage of the fulfilment of virtue by the virtuous."

### ***The Attributes of Ratanā***

- being highly honoured and adorable,
- being worthy of infinite value,
- being incomparable and superior,
- being difficult to see, to meet, and to gain,
- being the utility of those glorious ones who have accumulated a great deal of meritorious deeds.

### ***The Buddha Ratanā***

- Buddha is endowed with the nine supreme attributes; and those who happen to see and hear the Buddha's Teachings can gain knowledge and peace of mind; therefore the Buddha is highly honoured and adorable for those who take refuge in him.

- The jewels like diamond, gold and silver, etc, are great in value. The owner of these jewels enjoys peace and happiness only in the present life whereas those who happen to see and take refuge in the Buddha, enjoy peace and happiness not only in the present life but also in future lives. So, the Buddha is the most valuable treasure.

As the ten jewels such as ruby, diamond, etc., are incomparable in value with other human utilities, so also the Buddha is incomparable with any other person in morality, concentration, and wisdom. Therefore, the Buddha is an incomparable treasure in the whole universe.

It is extremely difficult to come across the wheel treasure of the Universal Monarch and yet it is more extremely difficult to come across the fully- enlightened person known as the Buddha. So, the Buddha is the most difficult to see.

As the precious jewels like diamond and ruby are owned and utilized not by poor people but by rich people,



so also the Buddha-treasure can be revered and worshipped not by ordinary persons but by glorious ones who have accumulated a great deal of meritorious deeds. Therefore, the Buddha is the most honourable, most precious, most incomparable, most rare and most worthy (for the glorious ones) treasure in the universe.

### ***The Dhamma Ratanā***

The Dhamma means the four Path-consciousness, the four Fruition-consciousness, the Nibbāna and the Teachings of the Buddha.

- These Dhammas should be listened, studied, practised and realized with great honour and adoration by those who wish to enjoy peace and happiness.
- It is so valuable that it cannot be appraised.
- It is incomparable and superior to any other worldly treasure.
- It is extremely difficult to come across and to listen to the Dhamma because the Dhamma appears only when the Buddha appears.

- The Dhamma can be listened, practised and realised not by ordinary persons but by the glorious ones who have accumulated great meritorious deeds. Therefore, the Dhamma is the most honourable, most precious, most incomparable, most rare and most worthy treasure.

### ***The Saṃgha Ratanā***

The eight kinds of noble bhikkhus are collectively known as the Saṃgha.

- The non-ariya bhikkhus (Sammuti Saṃgha) who have the same view and the same moral practice as the noble bhikkhus (Ariya Saṃgha) are also included in the Saṃgha.
1. The Saṃgha being endowed with nine supreme attributes, should be highly honoured and venerated.
  2. The Saṃgha is peerless because it enables one who takes refuge in the saṃgha to achieve happiness and prosperity in the present existence as well as in future existences.
  3. The Saṃgha is an incomparable treasure because the members of the saṃgha are

incomparable in morality, concentration and wisdom in the whole world.

4. The Saṃgha Ratanā is extremely difficult to come across because it comes into existence only when the Buddha arises in the world. Only those who have accumulated great merits can revere and take refuge in this saṃgha Ratanā.

Therefore the Saṃgha is the most honourable, most precious, most incomparable, most rare and most worthy treasure in the whole Universe.

## The Virtues Of the Triple Gem

### *The Nine Supreme Virtues of the Buddha in Pāḷi*

Itipi so bhagavā -

- Araham
- Saṃmāsambuddho
- Vijjācaraṇasampanno
- Sugato
- Lokavidū
- Anuttaropurisadammasārathi
- Satthā devamanussānam
- Buddho
- Bhagavā

## **The brief Meanings of the Virtues**

### **(1) *So Bhagavā itipi Arahamaṃ***

The Blessed one is known as Arahamaṃ because he is worthy of special veneration by all men, devas and brahmas.

### **(2) *So Bhagavā itipi Sammāsambuddho***

The Blessed One is known as Sammāsambuddho because he has fully realized all that should be known by himself.

### **(3) *So Bhagavā itipi Vijjācaraṇasampanno***

The Blessed One is known as Vijjācaraṇasampanno because he is proficient in supreme knowledge and in the practice of morality.

### **(4) *So Bhagavā itipi Sugato***

The Blessed One is known as Sugato because he speaks only what is true and beneficial.

### **(5) *So Bhagavā itipi Lokavidū***

The Blessed One is known as Lokavidū because he knows all the three Lokas, namely satta-loka--the world of living beings,

*saṅkhāra-loka*--the world of conditioned things, and *okāsa-loka*--the planes of existences.

**(6) *So Bhagavā itipi Anuttaro purisadamma-sārathi***

The Blessed One is known as Anuttaro purisadammasārathi because he is the incomparable charioteer who is adept in taming those who deserve to be tamed.

**(7) *So Bhagavā itipi Satthā devamanussānam***

The Blessed One is known as Satthā-devamanussānam because he is the guiding teacher of all devas and men.

**(8) *So Bhagavā itipi Buddhō***

The Blessed One is known as Buddhō because he himself is the Enlightened One, and he can enlighten others.

**(9) *So Bhagavā itipi Bhagavā***

The Blessed One is known as Bhagavā because he is the most exalted and most glorious One.



## The Six Supreme Virtues of the Dhamma in Pāḷi

- Svākkhāto bhagavatā dhammo
- Sandiṭṭhiko
- Akāliko
- Ehipassiko
- Opaneyyiko
- Paccattam veditabbo Viññūhi

### *The Brief Meanings of the Virtues*

- (1) The Dhamma comprising the four Maggas, the four Phalas, the Nibbāna and the Buddhist scriptures is well expounded by the Exalted One.
- (2) It can be seen and realized vividly by oneself if one practises the Dhamma.
- (3) It yields immediate results to those who practise the Dhamma and the Fruition-consciousness follows the Path-consciousness without delay.
- (4) It is so distinct and pure that it is worthy of inviting others to come and see it.
- (5) It is worthy of being perpetually borne in mind.
- (6) It can be experienced by the wise individually.

## ***The Nine Supreme Virtues of the Saṃgha in Pāḷi***

- Suppaṭipanno bhagavato Sāvakaśaṃgho
- Ujuppaṭipanno bhagavato Sāvakaśaṃgho
- Nāyappaṭipanno bhagavato Sāvakaśaṃgho
- Sāmicippatipanno bhagavato Sāvakaśaṃgho
- Yadidaṃ cattāri purisa-yugāni aṭṭha-purisa-puggalā  
esā bhagavato Sāvakaśaṃgho
- Āhuneyyo
- Pāhuneyyo
- Dakkhineyyo
- Añjalīkaraniyo
- Anuttaraṃ puñña-kkhettaṃ lokassa.

## ***The brief Meaning of the Virtues***

- (1) The disciples of the Exalted One practise well the threefold training of morality, concentration and wisdom.
- (2) The disciples of the Exalted One practise righteously the threefold training.
- (3) The disciples of the Exalted One practise to realize the Nibbāna. They are endowed

with righteous conduct leading to the Nibbāna.

- (4) The disciples of the Exalted One practise to be worthy of veneration.

The disciples of the Exalted One, numbering four pairs of ariyas or eight noble persons are:

- (5) worthy of receiving offerings brought even from afar;
- (6) worthy of receiving offerings specially set aside for guests;
- (7) worthy of receiving offerings offered with the belief that the offering will bear fruits in future existences;
- (8) worthy of receiving reverential salutation of men, devas and brahmas;
- (9) the peerless fertile field for planting the seeds of merit.

### ***Reflection on the Virtues of the Buddha (Buddhānussati)***

Reflection on the virtues of the Buddha means contemplating repeatedly on any one of the nine supreme virtues of the Buddha without any recitation.

## ***The Benefits of Reflecting on the Virtues of the Buddha***

The person reflecting on the virtues of the Buddha can gain the following benefits:

- (1) Veneration of the Buddha with great respect;
- (2) Attainment of good mindfulness;
- (3) Development of wisdom;
- (4) Having the notation of living together with the Buddha;
- (5) Gaining much merit;
- (6) Gaining much joy and gladness;
- (7) Being devoid of fear even in the face of dreadful danger;
- (8) Avoiding evil deeds, because one feels one is in front of the Buddha;
- (9) Being worthy of veneration as sacred as the chamber of relics;
- (10) Being ashamed and frightened to commit evil deeds;
- (11) Attainment of good existences in future lives if one does not attain the Path-consciousness and its fruition in the present life.

**Note:** Reflection on the virtues of the Dhamma and the Saṃgha can be undertaken as one reflects on the virtues of the Buddha, and similar benefits will be attained.

### *The Story of Lady Kālī*

Here the story of lady Kālī should be stated to prove the immediate benefits due to the contemplation on the virtues of the Buddha.

There was a young lady named Kālī. She was the daughter of a rich man in Rājagahacity. She was far gone with child at that time. On the fullmoon day of Wāso, the grand Āsslhi celebration was held in the whole city. In order to view the celebration from her balcony she went up to the upper terrace and stood in fresh air by the window. At that moment, the two leaders of celestial warriors named Sātagīri and Hemavata, together with their one thousand followers met in the sky above her house.

These two warriors were those who became disciples after the Mahā-parinibbāna of the Kassapa Buddha and they became well-versed in all three Piṭakas. So, they were very clever in making decisions on disputes of the Vinaya disciplinary rules. One day, they made a wrong and unfair decision in favour of their disciples.



When they passed away, they were re-born as the two leaders of celestial warriors due to the evil Kamma (Akusala Kamma). One of them, named Hemavata, lived in the Mount Himalya, and the other, named Sātagīri, lived in the Mount Sāta in the southern part of Majjhima-desa.

When they met at the Great Assembly of celestial beings held on the Mt. Himalya, they recognized each other and recalled their past existences. They made promise to inform each other any marvelous and extraordinary happenings that occurred in their own regions.

The Buddha preached the Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta at the Deer Park on the fullmoon day of Wāso after attaining the Buddhahood. It was the day of special significance; therefore, marvelous and extraordinary happenings occurred in the whole Universe including the Mt. Himalya. Hemavata, who lived in Himalya, went towards Majjhima-desa together with his five hundred followers to tell his friend, Sātagīri, about the wonders of Himalya.

At that time Sātagīri together with his five hundred followers also went towards Himalya to tell his friend Hemavata about the appearance of the Buddha. Then they met in the sky above the house of Kālī in Rājagaha. Sātagīri

said that the Buddha had appeared in the world and invited him to see the Buddha. But, Hemavata did not accept the invitation at once and inquired the Buddha's virtues. So, Sātagiri explained to him about the virtues of the Buddha in detail.

On hearing their conversation, the lady Kālī was greatly delighted and thought, "Oh! the Buddha is the One indeed who is endowed with such a sort of supreme marvelous virtues!" As she was contemplating on the virtues of the Buddha, she felt extremely delighted and attained Sotāpatti-fruit.

## ***Belief in Kamma and its Result***

### ***Kamma***

'Kamma' is a Pāli word meaning 'action! There are three kinds of Kamma or action;

- (a) Bodily action (kāyakamma),
- (b) Verbal action (Vacīkamma), and
- (c) Mental action (Manokamma).

These three kinds of kamma arise out of volitional activities. So, 'Volition' is another meaning of Kamma.

## ***The Knowledge of Kammassakatā***

All living beings in the world have:

- Kamma as their possession;
- Kamma as their inheritance;
- Kamma as their cause;
- Kamma as their relatives;
- Kamma as their refuge.

It is indeed kamma that conditions all beings to be inferior or superior.

The knowledge that kamma is one's own property is called **Kammasakatā-ñāṇa**.

## ***"How Kamma Bears Results"***

In Culakammavibhaṅga Sutta, the Buddha explained the results of Kamma as follows:

1. Those who used to kill living beings have short lives.
2. Those who used to abstain from killing living beings enjoy long lives.
3. Those who used to torture others have many diseases.
4. Those who used to abstain from torturing others enjoy good health.
5. Those who used to be short-tempered are ugly.

6. Those who used to be good tempered are beautiful.
7. Those who used to be jealous of others have little influence on others.
8. Those who used to be free from jealousy have great influence on others.
9. Those who are not used to giving alms are born poor.
10. Those who are used to giving alms, are born rich.
11. Those who are used to be conceited and arrogant are of low lineage.
12. Those who are used to be humble and not arrogant are of high lineage.
13. Those who are used to inquire about good and evil are born intelligent.
14. Those who are not used to inquire good and evil are born without intelligence.

### ***Wholesome Action (Kusala Kamma)***

A meritorious action is a faultless and beneficial action. Faultless here means the absence of greed, hatred, delusion, envy.

jealousy, etc., in the mind while performing the meritorious deeds. A well-doer, by the result of his wholesome actions, achieves happiness not only in this present existence but also in future existences. The wholesome actions also consist of three kinds: bodily, verbal and mental actions.

### ***Unwholesome Action (Akusala Kamma)***

An unwholesome action is a blameworthy and immoral action producing evil results. An evil-doer, by the results of his unwholesome actions, suffers from various kinds of miseries not only in this present existence but also in future existences. The unwholesome actions also consist of three kinds: bodily, verbal and mental actions.

All beings have to enjoy or suffer according to their good or bad actions done by themselves. No creator can change the results of *Kammic* actions. As a Kamma will produce its due result in its own way, the Kamma and its result is called the law of Kamma (*Kamma-niyāma*).



## "Good Conduct and Evil Conduct"

### *Ten kinds of evil conduct (Duccarita)*

Immoral actions or misconducts or evil conducts committed bodily, verbally, and mentally are called Duccarita(du=evil; carita=conduct).

### *Three kinds of bodily evil conduct*

- (1) Killing living beings (**Pānātipāta**);
- (2) Taking other's properties that are not given either by his bodily gesture or speech (**Adinnādāna**);
- (3) Committing sexual misconduct (**kāmesumicchācāra**).

### *Four kinds of verbal evil conduct*

- (1) Telling lies (**Musāvāda**);
- (2) Slandering between two good friends or two beloved ones (**Pisunavācā**);
- (3) Harsh speech, vulgarities (**Pharusavācā**);
- (4) Vain talk or conversation that is not beneficial to oneself nor to others (**Samphappalāpa**).

***Three kinds of mental evil conduct***

- (1) Covetousness (**Abhijjā**);
- (2) Ill-will (**Byāpāda**);
- (3) Wrong view (**Micchādiṭṭhi**).

These ten kinds of evil conduct are called "Akusalakammāpatha", because they are the ten Paths that lead to lower abodes.

It is stated by the Buddhist texts that, of these ten kinds, the wrong view is the most serious and blameworthy. Therefore it is very important to have a right view.

***Ten kinds of good conduct (Sucarita)***

Wholesome actions through deed, word and thought are called Sucarita (Su=good, carita=conduct).

***Three kinds of bodily good conduct***

- (1) Abstaining from killing any living being;
- (2) Abstaining from taking other's properties by means of bodily and verbal actions;
- (3) Abstaining from committing sexual misconduct.

### ***Four kinds of verbal good conduct***

- (1) Abstaining from telling lies;
- (2) Abstaining from slandering or talking ill of others;
- (3) Abstaining from using harsh speech;
- (4) Abstaining from idle talks.

### ***Three kinds of Mental good conduct***

- (1) Anabhijjā = Abstaining of entertaining covetousness;
- (2) Abyāpāda = not having ill-will and evil desire;
- (3) Sammādiṭṭhi = right view.

### ***Ten kinds of meritorious deeds***

The following meritorious deeds, which are worthy to be done in this present existence, are called 'Puññakriyāvatthu'; they are :-

- (1) Generosity or Charity (**Dāna**);
- (2) Morality (**Sīla**);
- (3) Meditation (**Bhāvanā**);
- (4) Paying due respect to those who are worthy of it (**Apacāyana**);
- (5) Helping others in performing good deeds (**Veyyāvacca**);

- (6) Sharing merit (**Pattidāna**);
- (7) Rejoicing in others' meritorious deeds and saying "well-done!" when one sees, hears or knows them (**Pattānumodana**);
- (8) Listening well to the Doctrine (**Dhamma savana**);
- (9) Teaching the Doctrine (**Dhammadesanā**);
- (10) Straightening one's views (**Diṭṭhijukamma**)  
(Having faith in Kamma and its results).

## Cultivating Loving-kindness

### *Permeating the Ten Directions with Loving-kindness*

- (1) May I be free from danger and enmity.  
May I be always well and happy.
- (2) May my parents and teachers be always well and happy.
- (3) May all beings in my home be always well and happy.
- (4) May all devas in my home be always well and happy.
- (5) May all beings in my village be always well and happy.

- (6) May all beings in my town be always well and happy.
  - (7) May all beings in my country be always well and happy.
  - (8) May all beings in the east be always well and happy.
  - (9) May all beings in the south be always well and happy.
  - (10) May all beings in the west be always well and happy.
  - (11) May all beings in the north be always well and happy.
  - (12) May all beings in the south-east be always well and happy.
  - (13) May all beings in the south-west be always well and happy.
  - (14) May all beings in the north-west be always well and happy.
  - (15) May all beings in the north-east be always well and happy.
  - (16) May all beings in the upper direction be always well and happy.
  - (17) May all beings in the lower direction be always well and happy.
- (While reciting "my parents", concentrate your attention on your parents. So also, while reciting "all beings in the east" concentrate your mind on all sentient beings living in the east.)



**Eleven Methods of Cultivating  
Loving-kindness according to  
Metta Sutta**

***Cultivating loving-kindness on all beings***

- (1) May all beings be always well and happy;  
May they be free from danger and enmity;  
May they live peacefully.

***Cultivating Loving-kindness in pairs***

- (2) May all beings, who can be frightened  
and who are fearless, be always well and  
happy;  
May they be free from danger and enmity;  
May they live peacefully.
- (3) May all beings, the visible and the invis-  
ible, be always well and happy;  
May they be free from danger and enmity;  
May they live peacefully.
- (4) May all beings, who are afar and who are  
near, be always well and happy;  
May they be free from danger and en-  
mity;  
May they live peacefully.

- (5) May all beings, Arahats and Non-arahats, be always well and happy;

May they be free from danger and enmity;

May they live peacefully.

***Cultivating Loving-kindness in groups of three***

- (6) May all long, short and medium beings be always well and happy;

May they be free from danger and enmity;

May they live peacefully.

- (7) May all large, small and medium beings be always well and happy;

May they be free from danger and enmity;

May they live peacefully.

- (8) May all fat, thin and medium beings be always well and happy;

May they be free from danger and enmity;

May they live peacefully.

### ***Cultivating Loving-kindness for the elimination of harmful thoughts***

- (1) May all human beings be free from deceiving one another.
- (2) May all human beings be free from looking down one another.
- (3) May all human beings be free from causing miseries to one another.

### ***The Four Sublime States***

- (1) Mettā = Loving-kindness and benevolence for the welfare of all beings.
- (2) Karuṇā = compassion on seeing miserable beings and wishing them to be liberated from sufferings.
- (3) Muditā = sympathetic joy on seeing happy beings
- (4) Upekkhā = equanimity or equilibrium of mind without love or hatred towards all sentient beings

Living in the practice of generating one of these four amounts to living in a sublime state. So these four kinds of living are called "The Four Sublime States" (Brahmavihāra)".

## ***Mettā, Loving-kindness***

Loving-kindness (mettā) is the opposite of hatred (dosa). Mettā is the mental factor called Adosa (non-hatred) which wishes for the welfare of other beings, contemplating: "May all beings be happy; May they be free from danger."

Mettā is generally understood as "Love" in Myanmar. There are three kinds of love:-

- (1) mutual love between husband and wife (Taṇhāpema) ,
- (2) mutual love among the members of the family (Gehassitapema) ,
- (3) Loving-kindness, or benevolence for the welfare (mettā) .

The first two kinds of love are not mettā. They are lust, greed and craving.

Mettā is the pure form of love which can bring peace and prosperity to all beings.

## ***How To Radiate Loving-kindness***

Developing and transmitting repeatedly one's benevolence for the welfare of others is called Mettā Bhāvanā—cultivation of loving-kindness.

Cultivation of loving-kindness should be given priority to oneself. By doing so, one develops one's sympathetic consideration for others wishing them to be happy and free from danger as oneself. Loving-kindness should not be radiated to the dead because they are unable to accept it.

First of all, concentrate your mind on the form of the person whom you want to radiate loving-kindness, till you come to discern his figures from head to toe, just as looking at his photograph. Then, radiate your loving-kindness to him while contemplating repeatedly thus: "May he be happy. May he be free from enmity". This is the method how to radiate one's loving-kindness towards others.

According to the admonition of some prominent and reverend teachers in Myanmar, to be more effective in radiating loving-kindness, one should practise as follows:

- (1) First observe the moral precepts.
- (2) Sit cross-legged keeping the body upright. Place your palms one upon another facing upwards with the tips of your thumbs touching each other. Without drooping your head, sit still with steadfast mindfulness on the person to whom loving-kindness is being radiated.



- (3) Focuss your mind on the person to whom you want to radiate loving-kindness visualising his personality. Then, contemplate in your mind-eye, cultivate your loving-kindness repeatedly and earnestly thus: "May he be happy and free from enmity." for at least fifteen to thirty minutes.
- (4) When you can successfully radiate your loving-kindness to a particular person, you can radiate your loving-kindness in the same way to many people, to the whole village, to the whole country and even to the whole world.

When you are accustomed to that practice, it will not be difficult for you to radiate your loving-kindness to all beings in all directions.

### ***The Benefits of Radiating Loving-kindness***

The benefits of loving-kindness are greater than those attainable from the practices of charity and morality. The benefits produced by cultivating loving-kindness for just a short moment are greater than those obtained by offering one hundred pots of cooked rice three times a day.

A person who cultivates loving-kindness can enjoy eleven kinds of benefits according to the teachings of the Buddha.

- (1) He enjoys a sound sleep.
- (2) He wakes up peacefully.
- (3) He does not have bad dreams.
- (4) He is loved by human beings.
- (5) He is loved by non-human beings.
- (6) He is guarded by devas.
- (7) He is unaffected by fire, poison and weapons.
- (8) He can develop concentration quickly.
- (9) His face is serene and cheerful.
- (10) He never dies in bewilderment.
- (11) He may be reborn in the brahma realm when he dies.

### ***Making a Wish and Sharing Merits***

After performing a meritorious deed, one should first make a wish and then share one's merit.

- (1) *Idaṃ me puññaṃ āsavakkhayaṃ vahaṃ hotu.*
- (2) *Idaṃ me puññaṃ nibbānassa paccayo hotu.*

(3) *Addhā imāya paṭipattiyā jāti, jarā, byādhī maraṇambhā parimuccissāmi.*

### **Meaning**

- (1) May this meritorious deed of mine lead me to the cessation of moral intoxicants.
- (2) May my deed of this merit be the support to the Nibbāna.
- (3) Owing to this moral practice, may I really be free from rebirth, ageing, sickness and death.

### **Sharing of Merits**

*Imaṃ puññabhāgaṃ sabbasattānaṃ dema*  
(Three Times)

### **Meaning:**

I share all of my merits with all sentient beings. I share all my merits with my parents, teachers, relatives, my guardian deva, the guardian deva of my home, the guardian deva of my village, the guardian deva of my town, the guardian deva of my country, the guardian deva of the earth, the king of death, the king of men, the king of devas, all devas and all petas.

May they all gain the merits of my meritorious deed as much as I do and may they all be happy and free from enmity.

May I call upon the guardian deva of the earth to bear witness.

May they all hear my words and rejoice in my meritorious deed!

Sādhu \_ Sādhu \_ Sādhu

Well-done, Well-done, Well-done

### ***The Final Salutation to the Triple Gems***

(1) *Imāya dhammānu dhammapaṭipattiyā  
Buddham pūjemi*

(2) *Imāya dhammānu dhammapaṭipattiyā  
Dhammam pūjemi*

(3) *Imāya dhammānu dhammapaṭipattiyā  
Saṃgham pūjemi*

### ***Meaning:***

(1) I pay homage to the Buddha by the practice of charity, morality, and meditation in conformity with the Nine Supramundane Dhammas.

(2) I pay homage to the Dhamma by -----  
Dhammas.

(3) I pay homage to the Saṃgha by -----  
Dhammas.

### ***Rejoicing In Others' Merit (Saying Sādhū)***

The Buddhists usually share their merits with others whenever they have performed meritorious deeds. "Sharing one's merit with others is called "Pattidāna kusala" and "Rejoicing in others' merits" is known as "Pattānumodana kusala" in Pāli.

In Tirokuṭṭa Sutta, it is stated by the Buddha that: "if the deceased relatives are reborn as petas who can rejoice in others' merit, one should perform meritorious deeds for the sake of them, and share merit with them. If the petas can say "Sādhū", they will be free from the miserable existences and they can receive celestial clothings, celestial mansions, celestial gardens and celestial utensils." In the Peta Vatthu also, it is mentioned that if a peta can rejoice in others' merits by saying "Sādhū", he will be immediately transformed into a deva.





## CHAPTER (4)

### *Dispensing Charity*

Every pious Buddhist more or less carries out the meritorious deeds of dispensing charity, observing morality and practising meditation. Out of these three, the Buddhists usually perform the charitable deeds daily. At every house of Buddhists, they offer food, water and flowers dedicated to the Triple Gems every morning. Moreover, with generous mindedness, they offer alms-food to the Saṃghas who go round from house to house for collecting alms-food, in procession or individually. In some towns, there are many hundreds of Saṃghas going in procession for alms-food. The Buddhists heartily believe that the daily act of offering alms-food to the Saṃgha is the main cause for the perpetuation of the Buddha's Teaching. According to their wealth, they occasionally make other donations such as inviting the monks to their home and offering food, novitiating their sons, donating the four

material requisites to the saṃgha, etc, In fulfilling the ten perfections, the Bodhisattha performed the perfection of charity prior to the other perfections. Therefore, Dāna is the first of the Ten Perfections. The charity is the first item of ten meritorious deeds stated in the previous chapter. Therefore in this chapter, the notable facts concerning charity shall be exegerated.

### ***The Sense of Charity***

Charity means donation or giving away one's own properties to others. There are three kinds of charity: giving material offerings (Āmisa dāna), giving sanctuary and protection to animals (Abhaya dāna) and giving doctrinal lectures (Dhamma dāna). In dispensing the charity, volition (cetanā) and the belief in kamma and its results (Saddhā) play important roles. In growing paddy, the good rains in the beginning, in the middle and in the later part of the rainy season can produce a good yield of rice. So also in performing the charity, the accomplishment of three steps of volition can produce great benefits to the donors. These three steps of volition are:-

- (1) Volition that arises before giving (Pubbacetanā);

- (2) Volition that arises while giving (Muñcacetanā); and
- (3) Volition that arises after giving (Aparacetanā).

It is very important to make the three-fold volition keen and pure, whenever we perform any act of charity.

### ***The Advantages of Charity***

Charity is praised by Buddha in many ways. It is:-

- the stairway to celestial realms;
- the packet of provisions in the long cycle of rebirths;
- the direct way to good destination;
- the support to attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna;
- the cause of becoming a ruler;
- capable of producing luxuries and wealth;
- capable of enjoying happiness;
- capable of self-protection;
- capable of civilising the uncivilized;
- capable of bringing success in everything; and
- the noblest auspiciousness.

## **Offering Alms-food**

I offer alms-food and other eatable to the compassionate Buddha who is endowed with the infinite accumulation of glory, merit (through the ten perfections) and wisdom. Owing to my deed of this merit, may I attain the Nibbāna as soon as possible.

### ***The Benefits of offering Alms-food***

If one does not eat cooked rice, he cannot live longer. He will become ugly, sad, weak and stupid for lack of nutrition.

Taking alms-food (cooked rice) can make one live long. Moreover, he will be endowed with beauty, happiness, strength and wisdom.

## ***Offering Water***

I offer this pure and cool water to the compassionate Buddha who is endowed with the infinite accumulation of glory, merit (through the ten perfections) and wisdom. Owing to my deed of this merit, may I attain the Nibbāna as soon as possible.

### ***The Benefits of Offering Water***

If one does not drink water, he cannot live longer. He will become ugly, sad, weak

and stupid. If one does not bathe, he will not be clean and fresh. Therefore, the donors of water can be endowed with longevity, beauty, wealth, strength, wisdom, cleanness, fame and great retinue. They will be free from thirst.

### ***Offering Flowers and Fragrance***

I offer these beautiful flowers and fragrance to the compassionate Buddha who is endowed with the infinite accumulation of glory, merit (through the ten perfections) and wisdom. Owing to my deed of this merit, may I attain the Nibbāna as soon as possible.

### ***Benefits of Offering Flowers and Fragrance***

Owing to this donation, one can be reborn in the celestial realm or in the human existence for one lakh world cycles. And in his final existence, he will attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna. There are many jātaka stories describing the benefits of offering flowers and fragrance.

### ***Offering Lights***

I offer lights (electric lights) which can eliminate the darkness, to the compassionate



Buddha who is endowed with the infinite accumulation of glory, merit (through the ten perfections) and wisdom. Owing to my deed of this merit may I attain the Nibbāna as soon as possible.

### ***The Benefits of offering Lights***

- One who offers lights to the Buddha can be repeatedly reborn in the celestial realms or in human existences. He will have bright and fair complexion. He will possess penetrative wisdom which can see through any wall or mountain or rock. He will attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna in his final existence.

**Note :** It is important that you must donate, contemplating on the virtues of the Buddha.

### ***Stories showing the Benefits of Charity***

#### ***A Story Showing the Benefits of Offering Alms-food***

-Ninety-four world cycles ago, there appeared Siddhattha Buddha. One day a man saw the Buddha in his alms round and noticed the fair complexion of the Buddha emanating yellow hues. On seeing thus the man admired

the Buddha and paid homage to him. He also invited the Buddha to his house and offered alms-food.

Because of his donation, that man was repeatedly reborn in celestial realms and human existences. He could incessantly enjoy both celestial and worldly pleasure. He was never reborn in the four miserable realms. In Gotama Buddha's time, he became a man of great wealth. When he came of age, he was ordained as a bhikkhu. Then he became an arahat.

### ***A Story Showing the Benefits of offering Water***

After the Padumuttara Buddha had attained Parinibbāna, the pious Buddhists offered pure water by pouring at the Bodhi Tree.

At that time one man also carried perfumed water in a beautifully decorated pot and offered it to the Bodhi Tree.

In his next existence, that man became a deva at the Tusitā celestial realm. He enjoyed celestial pleasure as well as royal pleasure in his many existences. In the Gotama Buddha's time, he became an Arahāt named Gandhodakiya Thera.

### ***A Story Showing the Benefits of Offering Flowers***

Once the Venerable Mahā Moggallāna went to the celestial realm. When he reached there, he saw a great splendid mansion among the colourful flowers blooming not only in water but also on land.

One goddess resided there together with her attendants. When the Mahā Thera saw her, he asked her about the meritorious deeds of her past existence.

The goddess replied thus, "Once I was called Pesavatī and I lived in Nālaka village which is in the eastern side of Rājagaha City. One day I met the Venerable Sāriputta and with much reverence I donated him many a flower. Thereby I can live peacefully in this grand mansion".

### ***A Story Showing the Benefits of Offering Lights***

One man paid homage to the Padumuttara Buddha lighting five lamps around the foot of a Bodhi tree. Due to this good deed, when he died he was reborn either in celestial realms or in human existences incessantly. He also

obtained the power of being able to see things from one hundred yojanās away through all obstacles.

That man became an Arahāt named Pañcadīpaka Thera in Gotama Buddha's time.

So also, Sumaṅgala Buddha donated lights in his fulfilment of dāna pārami. Owing to this merit, bright hues were emitted from his body day in and day out. Those hues were brighter than those of the sun, the moon, stars and planets.

### ***Offering Alms-food***

Offering alms-food is one of the cherished practices followed by pious Buddhists. The purpose of daily offering of alms-food is to uphold the bhikkhus residing in the community, to learn and practise meditation without any anxiety and tiredness about their subsistence. Understanding this fact, the lay people organize themselves into groups to keep up the practice of offering alms-food to bhikkhus. Some groups or teams offer alms-food every day, some on a day which they can afford, some on every Sabbathday during the Buddhist Lent and some throughout the whole Buddhist Lent.

The donors offer alms-food without discrimination as to person or sect or monastery. If they can afford, they also donate curry besides alms-food. Due to this meritorious deed the bhikkhus can devote themselves to learning and meditation free from anxiety about their subsistence. In this way, the bhikkhus from such towns as Pakokku and Mandalay can study the Buddhist scriptures incessantly. For the lay people they can do the meritorious deed daily and so they can gain many benefits. Even on the eve of their donation they are so busy with collecting necessities in advance, cooking and performing religious activities that their minds inclining towards meritorious deeds get more and more developed.

At dawn, they feel delighted to offer alms-food to the bhikkhus. Therefore, the act of alms-giving shows the high spirit of Myanmar Buddhists on religion. So also this act reveals the cooperation and attentiveness in meritorious deeds. When the ceremony which marks the end of weekly offerings during the Buddhist Lent is held, various offerings are hung on tree-shaped stands and they are then donated to the Bhikkhus.



Based on this alms-giving practice, activities are carried out for the welfare of the people of Myanmar and for the propagation of Buddha's Teachings. There arise friendship and unity among nationals. It is of vital importance to keep up the practice of offering alms-food because this practice brings long-term benefits not only to the donee bhikhus but also to the lay donors.

### ***Sappurisa-dāna***

The charity done by the virtuous is called ***Sappurisa-dāna***. There are five kinds of Sappurisa-dāna, namely:-

- (1) Saddhādāna,
- (2) Sakkaccadāna,
- (3) Kāladāna,
- (4) Anuggahitadāna, and
- (5) Anupahaccadāna.

#### ***(1) Saddhādāna***

The charity based on the belief in kamma and its results is called Saddhādāna.

The person who dispenses this kind of charity will possess great wealth and very

beautiful complexion in whatever existence his charity ripens to produce benefits.

## **(2) *Sakkaccadāna***

Sakkaccadāna means donating the well-prepared offerings to the donees with much respect and reverence.

In whatever existence his charity ripens to produce benefits the person who dispenses that kind of charity will be wealthy and his children, wife, slaves and employees are obedient to him.

If one donates the offerings contemptuously, he has no influence on his children, wife and slaves, in spite of being wealthy in his future existences.

## **(3) *Kāladāna***

The charity dispensed at an appropriate time is called Kāladāna.

In whatever existence his charity ripens to produce benefits, the person who dispenses that kind of charity will be very wealthy. He can get everything which he desires whenever necessary.

A person who does not dispense charity at an appropriate time cannot gain which he desires when he needs, although he is wealthy.

#### **(4) *Anuggahitadāna***

The charity dispensed with the mind not attached to the offering is called Anuggahitadāna.

In whatever existence his charity ripens to produce benefits the person who dispenses that kind of charity is very wealthy.

His mind is inclined to the enjoyment of worldly pleasures.

If a person dispenses charity with no intention to honour the donee, he does not want to enjoy his valuable properties.

#### **(5) *Anupahaccadāna***

The charity that does not harm the donor himself nor anyone else is called Anupahaccadāna.

In whatever existence his charity ripens to produce benefits, the person who dispenses that kind of charity will be wealthy and will possess valuable property.

His wealth and possessions can be unaffected by five kinds of danger, namely;

floods, conflagration, tyrants, thieves and unbeloved heirs.

If a person dispenses charity with detrimental to himself or to others, his properties will be destroyed by the five kinds of danger although he is wealthy.

### ***The Story Showing the Benefits of Sappurisa-dāna***

In Bārānasi, there was a generous couple. Both of them took refuge in the Three Gems and they were endowed with conviction. They had only one son named Nandiya. He was also a generous one and used to donate offerings to bhikkhus out of conviction. When his parents passed away, he became a man of great generosity. He always placed cooked-rice-pots in front of his house not only for bhikkhus but also for beggars and travellers.

Later, he built a quadruple hall in the great monastery at Isipatana. Each room was furnished with great splendour.

After the construction he donated it to the Buddha and the Saṃgha. As soon as the donation water fell on the Buddha's hands, there arose a great celestial mansion in the Tāvātimsa celestial realm for Nandiya's use.

During one of the Venerable Mahā Moggallāna's visits to Tāvātimsa, he saw a new mansion which he had never seen before. So he asked the celestial beings whose mansion it was. They replied that it belonged to Nandiya, the lay devotee. When the deities saw the Venerable Mahā Moggallāna, they descended from the mansion and said, "We are the attendants of Nandiya. We feel very lonely because our master has not come yet. Please urge him to come here as soon as possible."

When the Venerable Mahā Moggallāna arrived back at the human world, he went to the Buddha and asked him thus; "Venerable Sir, for those who perform meritorious deeds do they have mansions and other riches prepared in the deva world even while they are still living in this world? The Buddha replied thus; "Moggallāna, why do you ask so? Have you not yourself seen the mansion and the riches waiting for Nandiya in the Tāvātimsa deva world?

Nandiya made offerings out of belief in kamma and its results. He offered alms-food respectfully to the bhikkhus who went round for collecting alms-food to his house daily. He donated the necessary material requisites to the



bhikkhus occasionally. He also dispensed charity devoid of clinging and attachment to the offertories. When he made donations, he did not harm himself nor anyone else. He had the great monastery built at Isipatana and had it furnished well. Then he donated that monastery dedicated to the Buddha and the Order of bhikkhus. He donated things in accordance with the five attributes of Sappurisdāna. Owing to his meritorious deeds, the great celestial mansion and the celestial wealth appeared in advance in the Tāvātimsa celestial realm before he died.



## CHAPTER (5)

### **Performance for the Perpetuation and Propagation of Sāsanā**

#### ***The brief History of the Great Councils***

The Buddha attained Enlightenment in 589 B.C. At that time, he was thirty-five years old. Since then, throughout forty-five years he preached many discourses and disciplines diligently for welfare of all beings without regarding cold, heat, tiredness, weariness, and ailment.

The Buddha left his last words thus: "Ānanda, the discourses and the disciplines I have taught and laid down to all of you will be your teacher when I am gone."

Therefore it is clearly noted that the Buddha will remain alive so long as the discourses and the disciplines are in existence. Of course, the discourses and the disciplines

are called Sāsanā, the Teachings of the Buddha. The permanency of Sāsanā relies on the existence of these discourses and disciplines. And vice versa, if they disappear, the Buddha and his teachings will also disappear. When this happens, the whole world will be overwhelmed by the darkness of ignorance.

Therefore the bhikkhus, the Buddha's disciples, have been successively striving for the preservation of the discourses and the disciplines so that they are not stained by mistakes and they do not disappear. But there had arisen many obstacles endangering the Buddha's Teachings through the ages. The bhikkhus have never neglected those obstacles and they tried to overcome them. Then they also held the Great Councils to promote and propagate the Buddha's Teachings. The successive kings, governments and the people contributed to the accomplishment of the Great Councils.

The Buddha attained Mahāparinibbāna in 554 B.C. That year was counted as the first year of the Buddhist Era. Now, two thousand and five hundred years have passed since the demise of the Buddha. During this time, altogether six great councils of Theravāda Buddhism have been held. In these councils, many

hundreds of Bhikkhus gathered together and recited the Buddha's discourses and disciplines in unity to approve the teachings of the Buddha. The discourses and the disciplines are recited in originality without any change, addition or modification.

### ***The First Great Council***

Three months after the demise of the Buddha the First Great Council was held in Sattapaṇṇi Cave Pavilion at Mount Vebhāra near the city of Rājagaha. Subhadda, who became a bhikkhu in his old age, disparaged the Buddha's Teachings on the seventh day after the Buddha had passed away. On hearing those insulting words, Venerable Mahākassapa decided to hold the First Great Council. Five hundred arahats, including Venerable Upāli and Venerable Ānanda, took part in that council. It started on the fifth waning day of Wagaung (August) and lasted seven months.

### ***The Second Great Council***

The Second Council was held at Vālukārāma monastery, near the city of Vesāli in 100 B.E. (443 B.C). It was held because the

bhikkhus of the Vajji clan from Vesāli preached and practised ten unlawful modifications in the Rules of the Order. The seven hundred arahats led by Venerable Yasa, Venerable Sabbakāmi and Venerable Revata took part in that council while King Kālāsoka of Vesāli and the people gave necessary supports to that council. It lasted eight months.

### ***The Third Great Council***

The Third Council was held at Āsokārāma Monastery in the city of Pāṭaliputta in 235 B.E (308 B.C). Sixty thousand ascetics infiltrated into the Saṃgha Order, polluted the Sāsana by their corrupt lives and heretical views. That is the main reason why the Third Council was held by one thousand arahats in order to protect the Sāsana.

Venerable Mahāmoggaliputta Tissa presided over the council. King Siridhammāsoka of Pāṭaliputta gave the necessary support to the council. It lasted nine months. After the Third Council, nine missions were sent to nine different places to propagate the Sāsana. The mission of five arahats to Suvaṇṇabhūmi, Myanmar, was led by Venerable Soṇa Thera and Venerable Uttara Thera.



### *The Fourth Great Council*

The Fourth Council was held at Cave Āloka in Malaya district, Sri Lankā, in 450 B.E (94 B.C).

The people of Sri Lankā were hard hit by rebels, hunger and starvation for twelve years. So the Bhikkhus had to make strong efforts to maintain the Buddha's Teachings. The elder bhikkhus foresaw that if there would appear such danger in future, the bhikkhus would not be able to memorize the discourses and the disciplines by heart because of the declination of their power of mindfulness, concentration and wisdom. Therefore, they held the Fourth Great Council.

It was during the reign of King Vaṭṭagāmani that five hundred bhikkhus, led by Venerable Mahādhammarakkhita, inscribed the entire words of the Buddha's Teachings on palm leaves.

The heads and elders as well as the people of Malaya district gave all-round support to the council.

The Fourth Great Council continued for one year.

### *The Fifth Great Council*

The Fifth Council was convened at Mandalay in Myanmar on the first waning day of Tazaungmone, 1232 Myanmar Era, 2415 B.E (November 1871). The scriptures inscribed on palm-leaves could not last for a long time. Besides there might be many variations in re-writing the scriptures from copy to copy. Therefore, the scriptures were inscribed on marble slabs in order to dispel these disadvantages.

Two thousand and four hundred bhikkhus led by Venerable Jāgarābhivamsa Thera (Tipiṭakadhara Mahādhammarājādhirājaguru) of Dakkhiṇārāma Monastery, Mandalay, convened to recite and approve the scriptures. King Mindon initiated and supported the Fifth Great Council to the end. The scriptures were first inscribed on seven hundred and twenty-nine marble slabs in the precinct of Lokamārajina Pagoda at the foot of Mandalay Hill. It took seven years, six months and fourteen days to finish this work. Then the bhikkhus recited to approve the inscriptions for five months and three days.

After the Fifth Great Council, the Pāḷi Texts were translated into Myanmar language, and the Doctrinal Order was promulgated to the whole country for purpose of purification and propagation of the Buddha's Teachings.

### ***The Sixth Great Council***

On the full-moon day of Kason, 1316 M.E, 2498 B.E (May, 1954), the Sixth Great Council was held in the Mahāpāsāṇa Great Cave, Kabā-Aye, Yangon, Myanmar.

The country of Myanmar had been one of the British Colonies for one hundred years and during this period the Buddha Sāsanā had deteriorated to some extent. So the Sixth Great Council was held aiming at the purification and promotion of the Buddha Sāsanā. Two thousand and five hundred bhikkhus from the five countries of Theravāda Buddhism participated in that council. Nyaung Yan Sayādaw, Venerable Revata (Abhidhaja mahāraṭṭhaguru), presided over it; the Mahāsi Sayādaw, Venerable Sobhaṇa (Aggamahāpaṇḍita), and the Mingun Sayādaw, Venerable Vicittasārābhivamsa (Tipitakadhara Dhamma-bhaṇḍhāgārika) took the leading roles in that council.

The doctrinal questions asked by the people of five Theravāda Buddhist countries: Myanmar, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Laos and Cambodia, were solved magnanimously. Twenty-five other countries also gave much help to that council.

At that Council, not only the canonical Pāli Texts of the Buddha but also the commentaries and sub-commentaries were re-examined.

In this way, Venerable Mahākassapa and the custodians of the Dhamma held the great councils up to six times and approved the words of the Buddha without any change and modification. The Teaching of the Buddha thus approved is called Theravāda Buddhism.

On the full moon day of Nayon, 1342 M.E (June 1980), the State Saṃgha Mahānāyaka Committee comprising all sects was initiated in order to purify, perpetuate and propagate the Theravāda Buddhism. Since then, the religious affairs have been carried out by the Saṃgha and the lay devotees of Myanmar hand in hand.

Under the patronage of the State Saṃgha Mahānāyaka Committee, various measures have been taken for perpetuation and promotion of the Buddha Sāsana and the moral development of the entire nation. The Pāli Texts were translated into English; two State Pariyatti Sāsana Universities were founded in Yangon and Mandalay with the contributions of the people. The lawful and the unlawful

doctrines were discriminated and the unlawful ones were crushed down. Missions were sent not only to the states and divisions of the country but also to foreign countries for the propagation of Sāsana.

This is the brief history of religious work carried out by successive Buddhist generations. Moreover, there are some other duties which should be carried out by every pious Buddhists whenever possible.

### ***Missionary Works***

Lecturing, rewriting and teaching the Buddha's discourses are important missionary works. Performing missionary works means encouraging others to follow the Buddha's Teachings which can be summed up as: *"to refrain from all evils, to do what is good, and to purify the mind."*

First of all, a missionary must cultivate loving-kindness in the hearts of all beings and convey them how to dispel their wrong views which can bring evil consequences. Among the demeritorious action, the five heinous deeds of killing one's mother, killing one's father, killing an arahat, causing blood to settle on the body of the Buddha, and causing schism in the



Samgha Order are the worst. Even though the perpetrator of these deeds has done a great deal of meritorious deeds, they cannot help him. He will be cast into hell (the Niraya) immediately on his death. Only when he is released from the Niraya, his meritorious deeds of the past existence will bear him good fruits.

A person, who has held a wrong view, earns greater demerit than a person who has killed his parents. If a person who has committed one of the five heinous deed, were to fall to the Niraya when the world is about to be destroyed, he has the opportunity to be released from there at the time of the destruction of the world. But the staunch wrong-viewer has to be shuffled to the Niraya of another world which remains undestroyed if the time for his release is not yet due at the time of the dissolution of the world.

The missionary work can salvage one from such grave offence. Therefore, it should be considered how noble and beneficial the missionary work is. Everyone should participate in the missionary work and strive for the proliferation of the Truth.

In doing so, one should cultivate loving-kindness on all wrong believers. Imparting

the Buddha's Doctrine to others is one of the missionary works. The Buddha expounded that there is no other deed as meritorious as imparting the Buddha's Doctrine.

Every body has a chance to take part in the missionary work. We must try our best to make those who have not yet believed in the Buddha's Teaching come to believe in the Teaching, and those who have already believed in the Buddha's Teaching come to believe all the more. If it is possible, we should go to the border areas of our country where the Buddha's Teachings have not well developed. If we ourselves are unable to do so, we ought to give support to the persons who are serving for that purpose.

### ***Making Others Take Refuge in the Three Gems***

'Saraṇagamaṇā means taking refuge in the three Gems: the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha. Each and every Buddhist must take refuge in the three Gems out of conviction.

How must we believe in the Three Gems?

We must believe that one can liberate oneself from four miserable existences as well as from the round of rebirths by taking refuge in the Buddha.

We must believe that the Dhamma can make all beings prosperous and liberate them from four miserable existences and the round of rebirths. So also we must believe that the Saṃgha can expound such Dhamma. Through these beliefs, we may come to know that the Three Gems are worthy of special veneration.

A person, who realizes the attributes of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha and has unshakable faith in them, can certainly be free from the four miserable realms in his next existences.

In the Buddha's time, there was a man of Sakyan clan named Saraṇāni who had taken refuge in the Three Gems for a long time. Once the Buddha spoke in praise of him:- "Saraṇāni Sākiya has taken refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha for a long time. How can he be reborn in the miserable realms?"

A person, who has unshakable faith in the Three Gems, and endowed with quick wit, ready wit and the knowledge of freedom from defilements, can attain arahatship in this very life. He is also free from the four miserable realms. Although a person, who has unshakable faith in the three Gems and endowed with

quick wit and ready wit, has not emancipated from defilements, he can be reborn in the Brahma realm if he has completely uprooted the lower five fetters. And he will become a Non-Returner (Anāgāmi) and will attain parinibbāna in the Brahma realm.

Moreover, if a person who has unshakable faith in the three Gems, but not endowed with quick wit, ready wit and the knowledge of freedom from defilements, can be a Once-Returner or a Stream-winner.

Even though a person has neither unshakable faith in the Three Gems, nor quick wit nor ready wit nor the knowledge of freedom from defilements, but if he possessed the Faculty of Conviction, believes in the Buddha and appreciates him, he can also be free from the four miserable realms. (Pathama Saraṇānisakka Sutta, Saraṇāni-vagga, Sotapatti Saṃyutta, Mahā-vagga Saṃyutta).

The statement "one can be liberated from four miserable existences merely by the belief in the Buddha" is very encouraging indeed. It is very clear that a Buddhist who takes refuge in the Three Gems cannot be cast into the four miserable realms. Therefore, in Bahukāra Sutta, the Buddha said that the person leading others who have no faith in the Three Gems to take

refuge in the Triple Gems (to be Buddhists) is the incomparable benefactor.

### ***Participating in Religious Associations***

The strength of an association is greater than that of an individual. Performing religious and social affairs by a well-organized group can bring more success than by an individual.

Among the many different associations, the task of religious associations is subtle and profound. Therefore the members of these associations should have respectable physical, verbal and mental behaviours. Finding other's faults easily, saying words of blame on others, being narrow-minded and impatient are not the proper behaviours of the members of religious associations. They should cultivate loving-kindness, compassion and good-will towards others. Moreover, even though the others treat them wickedly and dishonestly, they should stand righteously. Only then they are able to carry out their activities more effectively.

In the Buddha's time, the people of Sāvatti used to make joint offerings to the Buddha. The Buddha said that the joint offering was very beneficial. A man, after hearing the discourse on charity, wanted to offer alms-food together with others to the Buddha and



his disciples. So he invited the Buddha and his disciples to take alms-food on the next day. Then he went from house to house asking the residents to share alms-giving and to donate rice, oil, bean, etc., according to their wishes. When he reached a rich man's house, that man was annoyed by his request. The rich man thought why he was asking others instead of donating as much as he could. Then the rich man asked the man to bring his bowl and gave rice and beans only as much as could be taken by three fingers. He also gave very little amounts of butter and molasses.

The promoter of charity took the rich men's offerings without mixing them with others'. When the rich man saw that, he sent one of his servants to watch him.

At the cooking place, the promoter of charity put a little rice given by the rich man into various pots of alms-food, gruel and desserts so that the rich man may gain much merit. In the same way beans, butter and molasses were also put in all eatables. The servant reported what he had seen.

The rich man did not understand the man's intention. The next day with a knife concealed on his body he went to the place where the Buddha and his disciples were taking

alms-food offered by the people. He intended to kill the man if he were disgraced in public.

After offering the food, the promoter of charity said to the Buddha thus: "Venerable Sir, this offering is a joint offering of all. In this joint offering some have given much and some have given little according to their own ability. May they all gain equal merit".

When the rich man heard those words, he realized that he was mistaken. So he pondered that if he did not confess his guilt, his head would be struck by thunder. He fell at the promoter's feet and begged for pardon. On seeing that, the Buddha enquired about the matter. So the promoter of charity explained the event in detail. The Buddha told the rich man not to think lightly of a good deed however small it may be. Then the Buddha gave a discourse on charity. At the end of the discourse the rich man attained Sotāpatti Fruition. It is a good example of joint offering.

### ***Supporting the Learners of the Buddhist Literature***

Laying down the foundations firmly is the basic need to build a great grand building. The long endurance of that building depends

on its foundations. In the great grand building of the Buddha Sāsanā, the Pāli Texts are the basic foundations.

The genuine Pāli Texts of the Buddha's Teachings have already existed in Myanmar. But to maintain these Teachings, there must be teachers and learners of the Buddha's Doctrine. Therefore, it is essential to support them sufficiently with four material requisites such as robes and alms-food so that they may study the Buddha's Teachings without any worry. Lay devotees should support them with keen volition and conviction.

It is difficult for the lay devotees to learn these teachings extensively because they are faced daily with many difficulties in their social affairs. They have to follow the instructions given by the bhikkhus. So long as the laity support the bhikkhus with material requisites, the bhikkhus will in return teach the Dhamma to the laity, as the Myanmar saying goes: "The island and the reed growing on it are interdependent". Teaching and learning the Buddhist literature are of great basic importance for the perpetuation of the Sāsanā. Only when one understands the Buddha's Teachings correctly, one can practise the Dhamma and realize the four Noble Truths.

If one observes at the culture, customs and tradition of a nation or a country, it is seen that they are under the influence of their respective religions.

The Myanmar culture, language, literature and tradition have the Buddha's Teachings as their base. They will fade out when the Buddhist doctrines fade out. Knowing this fact, the successive governments have been holding the dhammācariya examinations, the pathamapyan examinations and the likes. Moreover, the bhikkhus and the nuns who passed these examinations have been awarded worthily by the government and the people. In addition, the examinations of Tipiṭakadhara and the five Nikāyas, the Visuddhimagga and the Abhidhammā exams for laity, and the basic examination of Buddhist culture for children have been held annually.

In some townships, there are various voluntary organizations, led by far-sighted wise men, which hold the examinations such as *Cetiyaṅgana*, *Sakyasīha*, *Vinayādhika* and so on.

At present the government is conferring various titles and denating the four requisites to the Teachers of the Buddhist literature and the meditation teachers. In the same way, the

voluntary associations such as the Young Men Buddhist Association and Maṅgalābyūhā Association hold examinations on Auspiciousness and the Chronicle of the Buddha for the youth annually, and give prizes and scholarships to outstanding students.

As the Buddha's teachings can enlarge the human knowledge and promote human culture, everyone should give full support to the teaching and learning of the Buddhist Literature.

### ***Supporting Those Who Are Practising The Dhamma***

It is the practical application of the Buddha's Teachings that every layman and bhikkhu must depend on for their liberation from miseries. That practice is also known as the Threefold Training, namely Morality (Sīla), Concentration (Samādhi) and Wisdom (Paññā). The basic requirement of the practice is the learning of the Buddha's Teachings and its result is the attainment of Magga, Phala and Nibbāna. One can attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna only by practising according to the Buddha's Teachings. Those who have fully practised according to the Buddha's Teachings should



urge and teach others so that they also undertake the practice. So long as they are doing so, the practical application of the Buddha's Teachings will never fade away and the world will never be devoid of Noble Persons. The Buddha's Teachings will also perpetuate and flourish for ever.

When everyone follows the Buddha's Teachings, some of them will attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna, and some will be able to reduce the defilements such as greed, anger and ignorance in their daily social affairs. And also the four factors of the Sublime States, namely, loving-kindness, compassion, sympathetic joy and equanimity, will be promoted. When the Four Sublime States are developed, the people will become mild and gentle in their physical and mental behaviour. When the people are devoid of greed and anger, there will be no theft nor robbery nor persecution. And the whole world will be overwhelmed by peace. It is the peaceful country that everyone aspires.

The Government of the Union of Myanmar is upholding the country to be a peaceful one by the practical application of the Buddha's Teachings. Therefore, it is necessary to support those who are practising the Dhamma

and those who are urging and teaching others to understand the practice.

### ***Promotion and Propagation of the Buddhist Literature***

Throughout the 45 years of his missionary period, the Buddha, who possessed the omniscient knowledge, gave discourses conducive to mundane and supramundane benefits.

The Arahats, such as Venerable Mahākassapa and Venerable Ānanda, held the Great Buddhist Councils successively in order to maintain those discourses and perpetuate the Buddha's Teachings for more than five thousand years.

The successive elder bhikkhus and the pious rulers have been striving for the purification and perpetuation of the Buddha's Teaching with great conviction and diligence.

Moreover, the elder bhikkhus have translated the Pāli texts into native languages and have written books on Buddhist Literature such as commentary and sub-commentary aiming at the quick and accurate understanding of the discourses in the Pāli-Texts. Modern learned writers have also written many books in

various aspects so that ordinary laymen can understand the Buddha's Teachings. With the help of these books every one can know how to practise the Doctrine easily and can attain Magga, Phala and Nibbāna.

The main resources for the promotion and propagation of the Buddhist Literature are the lecturers, the teachers, the writers and the compilers who have thorough knowledge of the Dhamma. The Buddhist Literature will well spread and the Buddha's Teachings will flourish so long as these learned persons are in existence lecturing and teaching the Dhamma and writing and compiling books on Dhamma.

### ***Religious Activities At Home***

Among the various activities for the promotion and propagation of Sāsana, the religious activities at home play an important role. A family is composed of parents and their children. The heads of a family are the parents and they are also responsible for the welfare of the whole family. They are also responsible for implementing religious activities within the family successfully. Therefore, the saying goes: "The meanness of the children falls on the heads of their parents". In Siṅgālovāda Sutta, the

Buddha mentioned the five duties of parents thus: "The parents should restrain their children from doing evils; they should encourage their children to do good; they should provide their children with education and professional training; they should provide their children with investment to start a business, and they should arrange suitable marriages for their children."

Since the time of conception the parents prepare everything well for their coming child. Being Buddhists, they recite the discourses of protection to protect their child from any danger or enmity. They also take refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha for the welfare of their offspring. This practice has fully taken place since the Buddha's time. The mother of Bodhi Prince took refuge in the Three Gems not only for herself but also for her son conceived in her womb.

It is the good tradition to all Buddhists to introduce one's children to Buddhism as early as possible as the start of family religious activities. During the conception the mother usually takes refuge in the Three Gems and observes the five precepts in order to ward off any danger from the child by the virtues of her meritorious deeds. At the time of the delivery

of the child, Aṅgulimāla Sutta is usually recited in order to give birth easily. When the woman in labour hears the Sutta, she remembers the virtues of the Three Gems. So she gets relief from the pain and the child can also be blessed with the good virtues of the Triple Gems.

When the naming ceremony is held, the parents invite the bhikkhus to donate offertories. They take refuge in the Three Gems and they listen to the discourses of protection recited by the bhikkhus for the benefit of the child. When the child grows old enough to speak, they teach him to recite "*Buddham saranam gacchami*" and so on. They give him the invaluable inheritance of Buddhism. When the child is clever enough to understand things to a certain extent, the parents, while embracing him, start teaching him the habit of paying homage to the Three Gems. They teach him to hold his palms together on his forehead and teach him to say: "I pay homage to the Buddha". This is the first physical conduct of a Buddhist. Parents are the first teachers of their children. Their teachings are strongly impressed on their children's memory. Good parents produce good children. Pure lineage, good



characters and religious and cultural traditions of the parents are valuable inheritance to their children.

King Kākavaṇṇa Tissa, the ruler of Laṅkādīpa, made his two son (Gāmani and Tissa) take a vow before meal at the ceremony of feeding the first meal to them not to take any meal without offering of the Three Gems. In this way he made the teachings of the Buddha rooted in their hearts. Wise parents establish the spirit of Buddhism in the hearts of their children.

Then they make their children pay obeisance to the Buddha at least twice a day: once in the morning and once in the evening. They also teach them words of prayers and train them to pay obeisance to the five objects of infinite gratitude before going to bed and after getting up from bed. At bed time, they tell their children jātakas and stories on Buddhist culture. When the children ask inquisitive questions, they give answers which the children can remember for ever.

The parents teach their children how to offer almsfood to the bhikkhus every morning. They also teach them how to offer food, water, flowers and lights to the Buddha. In this way

the religious activities in the family get more and more developed. When the children grow older, the parents teach them not to do evils, explaining the disadvantages of the evils. And they encourage their children to do good, explaining the benefits of the good.

When the children are old enough to learn, they are sent to the monastery to learn writing, reading and arithmetics, and also to learn Buddhist literature such as Maṅgala Sutta, Siṅgālovāda Sutta and Lokanīti. In this way, there is a progress of religious activities in the family owing to the piety, the devotion and the wise guidance of the parents.

Buddhism and Myanmar are inseparable and they are joined together permanently. The Buddha's Teachings are the invaluable guidance for the Myanmar cultural traditions. Because of this invaluable guidance Myanmar has been a well civilized country in the world for thousands of years. The nationality and the religious fervour are also well safeguarded.

The more successful the family religious activities, the more perpetual and the more developed the Buddha's Teaching. Therefore every Buddhist must try his best for the

success of the family religious activities which is the foundation for the perpetuation, promotion and propagation of the Buddha Sāsanā.

### **Religious Activities in the Community**

Performing religious activities in the community is one form of the important tasks for the perpetuation and propagation of Sāsanā. Wards and villages are made up of families. Groups of wards and villages form towns, districts, divisions, states and country. Thus, if the Buddha's Teachings can be established in each family and community, the Sāsanā will flourish in the whole country.

When we follow the Buddha's Teachings, we shall gain happiness and success not only in the present life but also in the next existences. Moreover, in our final existence, we shall attain the ultimate peace of Nibbāna. It is very precious to be a Buddhist. To be able to enjoy such a precious life, ignorant persons and wrong viewers should be converted into wise persons and right viewers. In doing so, organizations should be formed in villages and townships and lectures and discussions should be held extensively. According to the Buddha's

advice, one should not only perform meritorious deeds but also urge others to do so.

Four types of persons are mentioned in the Buddhist literature as follows:-

- (1) A person who himself does meritorious deeds but does not urge others to do so;
- (2) A person who urges others to do meritorious deeds but he himself does not do so;
- (3) A person who does not himself do meritorious deeds nor urges others to do so;
- (4) A person who himself does meritorious deeds and urges others to do so.

Their different attitudes and activities bring different benefits to them. When they reap the benefits of their meritorious deeds in future existences:

- The first person enjoys great wealth but lacks in companionship;
- The second person enjoys companionship but lacks in wealth;
- The third person enjoys neither wealth nor companionship;
- The fourth person enjoys both wealth and companionship.

According to this discourse, it is obvious that a person, who himself does the meritorious deeds and urges others to do so, will enjoy the greatest benefits among the four types of persons. Therefore to lead the community to participate in religious activities is of great importance.

There are two main objectives in doing the religious activities in the community: (1) to bring peace and prosperity to the members of community not only in the present lives but also in future existences, and (2) to promote the unity among the community.

To implement these objectives, the Myanmar nationals set up young women's associations, youth associations, etc., and unitedly participate in religious and social affairs for the welfare of the whole nation. It is necessary to have a religious hall in the community. So all Buddhists are responsible for building religious halls in their respective quarters.

On every Sabbath day, the members of the associations should urge everyone in the community to observe the moral precepts at the religious halls. There is a Myanmar saying: *"We know the importance of drinking water and foot-wears when we travel in summer, and*



*the value of charity and morality at the time of death."*

The members of the community should meet regularly on Sabbath days at the religious halls to observe the moral precepts. They should collect donations in terms of money or kind from house to house occasionally, distribute part of the donations to monasteries in proportion to the number of bhikkhus and use part of the donations to prepare food for offering to the bhikkhus in the mornings.

The observers of the moral precepts should read or listen to the Dhamma on Sabbath days. In addition to daily offering of food to the bhikkhus, great special ceremonies for offering food and other requisites to the Buddha and the Saṃgha are usually held collectively and merrily. Occasional offering of the four requisites to bhikkhus by drawing lots, and annual ceremonies of conveying the twenty-eight Buddha images around the wards and villages are also held for the welfare of the community. The ceremonies of novitiation and ordination are also held in the community yearly. Donation ceremonies of Wazo robes at the beginning of the Buddhist lent and donation ceremonies of Kathina robes at the end of the Buddhist lent are also held merrily.

In order to propagate the Buddha's Teachings and to uplift the religious knowledge of the youth, training classes on Buddhist culture, on the Thirty-eight Blessings and on the Buddhist Abhidhamma are held regularly. Strenuous efforts are made to arouse the interest and inspire the students to come to these classes, and necessary arrangements are provided for the convenience of the learners to attend classes.

The organizers also make attempts to hold discussions and lectures on Dhamma. On the Myanmar New Year Day, at the cross-road of every ward and village, people collectively listen to the discourses on holy protection. They set free fish, birds and other animals, and pay respect to the aged.

Seasonal festivals such as the festival of pouring water at the foot of the Bodhi Tree in the month of Kason (May) are also held annually. Social services such as opening ceremonies of new community, dwellings, birth-day ceremonies, wedding ceremonies and funeral rites are also performed collectively.

Being pious Buddhists, the Myanmar people make endeavours for the welfare of the community with conviction, devotion and compassion. These endeavours lead the community to peace, harmony and prosperity.

King Mindon, the founder of Mandalay and the sponsor of the fifth Great Saṃgha Council used to pronounce the royal edict of important rules to promulgate the religious duties of observing the five moral precepts, the thirty-eight blessings and the four sublime states on the fifth waxing day of every month to the whole country. The royal scroll mentioning the above pronouncement of the king was placed on the frontal globe of the royal elephant and conveyed around the city, beating the great drum carried by fifty persons. The King also established religious associations and religious halls.

That peace and happiness cannot be achieved by the physical progress alone have been demonstrated by the people of technically advanced countries. The moral progress is very essential to achieve true peace and happiness in life. The Buddha's Teaching can actually furnish the spiritual and moral progress to all human beings.

Therefore, every citizen should participate in the noble missionary work of propagating the Buddha's Sāsanā in the community as well as in the whole country so that all the people are spiritually and morally developed to enjoy peace and happiness to the fullest extent.



# CHAPTER (6)

## Social Duties

### *(A) The Duties as shown in Siṅgālovāda Sutta*

Siṅgālovāda Sutta means the discourse preached by the Buddha to a young man named Siṅgāla. In this sutta, the Buddha explained the social duties for all human beings and they include the duties of parents, the duties of sons and daughters etc. If one fails to observe these duties one encounters a declination in prosperity in addition to the misfortune of being reborn in woeful abodes after death. If one observes these duties, one enjoys prosperity and high dignity in the present life and one will be reborn in pleasant abodes after death. So, all human beings should observe these social duties with due respect and firm conviction. These duties are stated in brief as follows:-

### *Five Kinds of Duty for Sons and Daughters*

1. Sons and daughters must attend closely to their parents in order to provide them with all the requisites in life.

2. They must carry out the social affairs of the business matters of their parents.
3. They must maintain their parents' properties, their parents' nationality, their parents' religious duties, and try to straighten their parents' religious view if they have a wrong view. They must also maintain the good name of their parents and their lineage.
4. They must obey their parents and make themselves worthy of the parents' heritage.
5. On their parents' death they should do good deeds in dedication to them and share the merits with them.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for Parents***

1. Parents must prevent their sons and daughters from misconduct.
2. They must show their sons and daughters the way to good conduct.
3. They must make their sons and daughters learn arts and sciences.
4. They must give them in marriage to suitable persons.



5. They must give them their inheritance at the proper time.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Pupil***

1. He must stand up and welcome his teacher when he sees the teacher coming.
2. He must attend and wait upon his teacher.
3. He must obey the words of the teacher with confidence and devotion.
4. He must serve his teacher and supply his needs.
5. He must learn carefully and respectfully what is taught or instructed by his teacher.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Teacher***

1. A teacher must teach his pupils good behaviour.
2. He must impart knowledge to him in such a manner that the pupil may thoroughly grasp the subject.
3. He must train his pupil without any discrimination.

4. He must speak well of his pupil's virtues and attainments to his friends.
5. He must prevent his pupils from danger.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Husband***

1. A husband must be kind to and adore his wife.
2. He must not treat his wife in an insolent manner.
3. He must not engage in sexual misconduct with other women.
4. He must give her control and authority over domestic matters.
5. He must provide his wife with garments and ornaments.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Wife***

1. A wife must arrange chores of the household well and run it smoothly.
2. She must distribute gifts fairly between her relatives and her husband's relatives.
3. She must not engage in sexual misconduct with other men.

4. She must keep and maintain all things orderly that are handed over by her husband.
5. She must be skillful and diligent in all her house works.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Good Friend***

1. A man must give his friends all necessary things as much as possible.
2. He must use affectionate words towards them.
3. He must do his best for the benefit of his friends.
4. He must think of them as himself.
5. He must be true to his words and promises.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Beneficiary***

1. A beneficiary must protect his friend when his friend is inebriated.
2. He must guard over his friend's properties when he is inebriated.
3. He must be a refuge for his friend when the latter is in trouble.

4. He must not depart his friend when he is in distress.
5. He must help his descendants.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Master***

1. A master should make his employees work in accordance with their capability and strength.
2. He must provide his employees with food and pay them sufficiently.
3. He must give them medical treatment when they are ill and sick.
4. On receiving delicious food, he must share it with his employees.
5. He must allow them to work at appointed times and let them enjoy leisure at other times for rest and relaxation.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for a Servant***

1. A servant must awake from sleep before the master.
2. He must sleep after his master.
3. He must take only what is given to him by his master.

4. He must try his best in his master's work.
5. He must always speak of the virtues of his master.

### ***Five Kinds of Duty for Laymen***

1. A layman must minister to the bhikkhus with affection in action.
2. He must minister to the bhikkhus with affection in speech.
3. He must show them affection in thought, wishing them well at all times.
4. He must always keep his house open to the bhikkhus.
5. He must provide them with material requisites.

### ***Six Kinds of Duty for Bhikkhus***

1. A bhikkhu must restrain his laymen from doing evil deeds.
2. He must exhort them to do good deeds.
3. He must protect them with loving-kindness.
4. He must preach them what they have never heard before.



5. He must explain to them what they have already heard.
6. He must show them the way to the realm of devas.

### ***Six Kinds of Duty for a Leader***

1. He must be more industrious than others.
2. He must be vigilant in order to lead others.
3. He must be kind to his subordinates.
4. He must forebear and forgive others.
5. He must be considerate and reasonable whatever he does.
6. He must be wise and foresighted in doing anything with his own wisdom.

### ***(B) Thirty-eight Kinds of Blessings***

Before the Buddha preached the Maṅgala Sutta, a certain rumour concerning maṅgala had arisen among men and devas twelve years in advance. They pondered what is maṅgala. And so, there were many divergence of opinions; some said seeing pleasant objects was Maṅgala, some said hearing pleasant sound was Maṅgala, some said

smelling sweet odour was Maṅgala, etc. This controversy spread from men to the devas and brahmās.

On one occasion the Exalted One was dwelling at the Jetavana monastery of Anāthapiṇḍika in Sāvatthi. Then at the middle watch of the night, a certain deva of extremely attractive appearance approached the Buddha, illuminating the entire Jetavana monastery.

Having approached the Buddha and having made obeisance to the Exalted One, he stood in a suitable place. Thus standing, the deva addressed the Bhagavā in verse: "Many devas and human beings, longing for their well being, pondered what is Maṅgala: Oh! the Exalted One, please tell us what the highest blessing is." Then, the Buddha expounded the following thirty eight factors of blessing.

### ***Maṅgala Sutta in Pāli***

#### **prelude**

- yam maṅgalam dvāḍassahi cintayimsu  
sadevakā sotthānam nādhigacchanti  
aṭha tim sañca maṅgalam.
- Desitam devadevena sabbapāpa  
vināsanam sabbaloka hitatthāya  
maṅgalam tam bhaṇāma he.

***Introduction***

- (a) Evaṃ me sutam.
- (b) Ekaṃ samayaṃ bhagavā Sāvattthiyam viharati Jetavane anāthapiṇḍi kassa ārāme.
- (c) Atha kho añatarā devatā abhikkantāya rattiyā abhikkanta vaṇṇā kevalakappam jetavanam obāsetvā. Yena bhagavā upasaṅkamitvā bhagavantam abhivā detvā ekamantam aṭṭhāsi.
- (d) Ekamantam thitā kho sādevatā bhagavantam ghāthāya ajjhabāsi.

***Discourse***

- Bahū devā manussāca maṅgalāni acintayum ākaṇ khamānā soṭṭhānam byūhi maṅgala muttamaṇ.
- Asevanāsa bālānam paṇḍitānañca sevanā pūjāca pūjaneyyānam etam maṅgala muttamam.
- Patirūpadesavāso ca pubbeca katapuññatā attasammā paṇidhica etam maṅgala muttamam.
- Bahusaccaṇa sippaṇca vinayo ca susikkhito subhāsitā ca yā vācā etam maṅgala muttamam.

- Mātāpitu upaṭṭhānam  
putta dārassa saṅgaho  
anākulā ca kammantā  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.
- Dānañca dhammacariyāca  
ñātakānañca saṅghaho  
anavajjāni kammāni  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.
- Āratī viratipāpā  
majjapānā ca saṁyamo  
appamādo ca dhammesu  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.
- Gāravo ca nivāto ca  
santuṭṭhī ca kataññutā  
kalena dhammassavanam  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.
- Khanti ca sovacassatā  
samaṇānan ca dassanam  
kālenadhamma sākacchā  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.
- Tapo ca brahmacariyañca  
ariyasaccāna dassanam  
nibbāna sacchikiriyaṅca  
etaṃ maṅgala muttamam.

- Phuṭhassa lokadhammehi  
cittam̐ yassa na kampati  
asokam̐ virajam̐ khemam̐  
etam̐ maṅgala muttamam̐.

### ***Conclusion***

- Etādisāni katvāna sabbattha maparājitā  
sabbattha sotthim̐ gacchanti tam̐ te sam̐  
maṅgala muttamam̐.

## **Explanation**

### ***prelude***

- Devas and men for twelve full years,  
pondered over things auspicious, but  
failed to discover the thirty eight fac-  
tors of Auspiciousness.  
The Buddha, greater than all devas, has  
taught things auspicious which remove  
all evil, which are for the good of the  
whole world. Let us now recite those  
factors of Auspiciousness.

### ***Introduction***

- On one occasion the Exalted One was  
dwelling at the Jetavana monastery of  
Anāthapiṇḍika in Sāvatti.
- Then, soon after the middle watch of  
the night, a certain deva of extremely



attractive appearance approached the Buddha, illuminating the entire Jetavana monastery.

- Having approached the Buddha and having made obeisance to the Exalted One, he stood at a suitable place.

Thus standing, the deva addressed the Bhagavā in verse:

- "Many devas and human beings, longing for their well-being, pondered what constitutes Auspiciousness; O! tell us what is the highest Auspiciousness?"

Then, the Buddha expounded these following thirty eight rules of conduct.

### ***Explanation of each blessing***

1. *Asevanāca bālānam*: Not to associate with the foolish is the highest blessing. Here, a foolish person is called one who thinks, speaks and conducts evil deeds in order to destroy the benefits of others.
2. *Paṇḍitānañca sevanā* :To associate only with the wise is the highest blessing. Here a wise person is one who thinks, speaks and conducts good

deeds in order to gain the benefits and prosperity for oneself and others.

3. *Pūjā ca pūjaneyyānam*: To honour those who are worthy of honour is the highest blessing. Here those persons are the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṃgha, parents, teachers, elders and those who are higher in prestige. In paying honour, there are two kinds of honour:- honouring by giving material gifts (Amisapūjā) and honouring by dhamma gift (dhamma pujū).
4. *Patirūpadesavaṣo ca* : To dwell in a suitable locality is the highest blessing. Here a suitable locality is a place where the Buddha's teachings exist and flourish well and which enables one to gain merits, wisdom and properties.
5. *Pubbe ca Katapuññatā* : To have done meritorious deeds in the past is the highest blessing.
6. *Attasammā paṇidhi ca* : To set oneself in the right course is the highest blessing. Here setting oneself in the right

course means making oneself endowed with morality, conviction, generosity and so on.

7. *Bāhusaccañca* : To have a wide general knowledge in mundane and supramundane levels is the highest blessing.
8. *Sippañca* : Being skillful in the technology and handicrafts is the highest blessing.
9. *Vinayo ca susikkhito* : Learning and abiding by the rules of conduct and disciplines laid down by the Buddha for lay devotees and monks is the highest blessing.
10. *Subhāsītā ca yā vā cā*: Speaking what is true, non backbiting, pleasant and benefitting to others is the highest blessing.
11. *Mātāpitu upaṭṭhānam* : To attend closely to one's parents is the highest blessing. Here attending closely to one's parents means ministering to all the needs of one's parents performing their duties, making them happy and healthy.

12. *Puttadārassa saṅgaho* : To take care of one's wife and children is a noble blessing.
13. *Anākulā ca Kammantā* : To perform a faultless work at a proper time and under proper circumstances is a noble blessing. A faultless work means an action which does not harm one's benefits as well as others' benefits.
14. *Dānañca* : Making charity is the highest blessing.
15. *Dhammacariyā ca* : To live righteously performing the ten kinds of meritorious deeds is a noble blessing.
16. *Ñātakānañ ca saṅgaho* : To support one's paternal and maternal relatives with food, clothings, money, etc, or with encouraging words and good advice is a noble blessing.
17. *Anavajjani Kammāni* : To perform a blameless action associated with the welfare of oneself and others such as keeping the sabbath precepts, planting trees and gardens, performing social work, etc, is a noble blessing.
18. *Āratī (pāpā)* : To resolve mentally to refrain from committing all evils, knowing

well the evil consequences of evil conduct is a noble blessing.

19. Viratī (pāpā): To refrain from committing three bodily evil deeds and four verbal evil deeds is a noble blessing.
20. Majjapānāca saṁyamo : To abstain from any intoxicating drink or drug such as alcohol, opium, cocaine, marijuana, heroin, etc, is a noble blessing.
21. Appamādo ca dhammesu : Not to be negligent in doing good deeds, namely to give away in charity (Dāna), to keep the moral precepts (Sīla) and to practise meditation (bhāvanā) is a noble blessing.
22. Gāravo ca : To pay respect to those who are worthy of respect is a noble blessing. The persons who are worthy of respect are the Buddha, the disciples of the Buddha (monks), and parents, teachers, uncles, aunts, elder brothers and sisters and those persons who are older or higher in status than oneself. One shows them respect by making way for them, by bending one's back on passing in front of them, by offering them one's



seat when travelling in a bus or train, by sitting in a lower place than theirs, and by holding things in offering to them.

23. Nivātoḥa : To be humble and modest without pride and conceit is a noble blessing. To be humble means not only showing a respectful behaviour but also being humble in one's physical, verbal and mental actions.
24. Santuṭṭhī ca : To be contented with whatever one possesses presently, although one must strive and work hard honestly and steadily, is a noble blessing.
25. Kataññutā : To acknowledge other's gratitude and repay the gratitude one ~~has~~ to owe is a noble blessing.
26. Kālena dhamma savanam: To listen to the dhamma which can lead one to prosperity in the present life as well as in future lives is a noble blessing.
27. Khantīca : To forgive the insult caused by others and be patient without bearing a grudge or dissatisfaction is a noble blessing.

28. Sovacassatā : To obey readily the advice given by elders and learned persons without any complaint or argument is a noble blessing.
29. Samaṇānañca dassanaṃ : To see noble persons who have purified or are trying to purify their minds from all defilements produces tranquillity and wholesome attitude in one's mind. So it is a noble blessing.
30. Kālena dhammasākacchā : Discussion of the Dhamma with learned persons at the proper time can lead one to prosperity in the present as well as in the future and it will enrich one's knowledge, straighten one's view and clarify one's mind. So it is a noble blessing.
31. Tapo ca : To practise austerity by controlling one's sense faculties in order to scorch all defilements is a noble blessing.
32. Brahmacariyañca : To undertake the noble practice such as observing the eight precepts and developing concentration and insight knowledge in order to realize the Four Noble Truths is a noble blessing.

33. Ariyāsaccāna dassanam: To realize the Four Noble Truths with four Path-consciousnesses stage by stage is a noble blessing.
34. Nibbāna sacchikiriya ca: To realize Nibbāna and enjoy the highest bliss with their respective Fruition-consciousness by the four types of Noble persons (Ariyas) is a noble blessing.
35. Phuthassa lokadhammehi cittaṃ yassa na kampati : To stand steadfastly with an unshaken mind when one is confronted with the ups and downs of life associated with the eight worldly conditions is a noble blessing.  

The eight worldly conditions are (lābha) gain, (alābha) loss, (yassa) fame, (ayassa) dishonour, (pasanna) praise, (ninda) blame, (sukha) well being and (dukkha) misery.
36. Asokam: To be free from all worries is a noble blessing.
37. Virajam: To have a mind free from the dust of all defilements such as greed (lobha), hatred (dosa) and ignorance (moha) is a noble blessing.

38. Khemamī : To possess a peaceful mind free from all dangers of defilements is a noble blessing.

## ***Conclusion***

Whoever abides by and follows the thirty eight rules of blessing overcomes all difficulties and oppositions in life and will gain success and prosperity in the present life as well as in future lives. These 38 rules of conduct according to the discourse of Blessings are called the highest Auspiciousness because they bring success and prosperity to all who follow them.

## ***(c) The Causes of Downfall according to Parābhava Sutta***

### **Introduction**

After hearing the discourse on Maṅgala Sutta and realizing the Thirty Eight Blessings, the devas wanted to know the causes of downfall for individuals. So they informed the king of Devas about their desire. On the next day, the king sent a deva to supplicate the Buddha to preach a discourse on the causes of downfall. Therefore, the Buddha delivered the Parābhava Sutta as follows:

### *Causes of Downfall*

1. To love and abide by the ten kinds of good conduct (sucarita) is the cause of one's prosperity whereas to hate and disobey the ten kinds of good conduct is the cause of one's downfall.
2. To love the ignoble persons and associate with them, and also to dislike the noble persons and dissociate with them are the causes of one's downfall.
3. To indulge in excessive sleep, to indulge in companionship, to lack in effort, to be lazy and to be easily angry are the causes of one's downfall.
4. Not to support and attend to old parents although one has the ability to support and attend to them is the cause of one's downfall.
5. To deceive monks or other donees with false speech is a cause of one's downfall.
6. To enjoy one's great fortune only for one's benefit without sharing it with others is a cause of one's downfall.
7. To be proud of one's birth, wealth and lineage and to despise and disrespect



one's own kinsmen is a cause of one's downfall.

8. To indulge in womanizing, drinking and to squander whatever one possesses are the causes of one's downfall.
9. To indulge in sexual misconduct with courtesans and other's spouses is a cause of one's downfall.
10. To marry a young person in spite of one's old age is a cause of one's downfall.
11. To give authority to a person who indulges excessively in food and dress and who is also a spendthrift is a cause of one's downfall.
12. To aspire to possess something or some position which is out of one's reach or ability is a cause of one's downfall.

## **Conclusion**

A wise person, considering these causes of deterioration carefully, shapes the course of life to be free from these bad causes and attain peace and prosperity in the present life as well as in future lives.

***(D) The Causes of becoming a Wretch  
according to Vasala Sutta***

On one occasion the Buddha was staying at the monastery of Anāthapiṇḍika in Jeta's Grove. One day while He was going for alms-round, he arrived at the house of a brahmin named Aggika bhāradvāja.

At that moment the brahmin was preparing for fire oblation, and when he saw the Buddha coming to his house he shouted angrily in harsh words thus: "Stop there, wretched mendicant, stop there wretched mendicant!"

The Buddha stopped and said gently to the brahmin: "Do you know, O! brahmin, who a wretch is and the causes that make one a wretch?"

The brahmin answered that he didn't know them and requested the Buddha to explain them to him. Therefore, the Buddha delivered the Vasala Sutta which explains the meaning of a wretch and causes of becoming a wretch.

1. One, who is hot-tempered, grudging, ungrateful, holding a wrong view, and deceitful in order to hide his fault, is a wretch.
2. One, who has no pity for living beings and kills them oneself or makes others kill them, is a wretch.

3. One, who besieges and destroys villages and towns is a wretch.
4. One, who does not pay back the loan owed to others, is a wretch.
5. One, who steals others' properties, is a wretch.
6. One, who kills and robs others is a wretch.
7. One, who bears false witness, is a wretch.
8. One, who commits sexual misconduct with other's spouses, is a wretch.
9. One who does not support and attend to ones's parents is a wretch.
10. One, who tortures one's parents, brothers, sisters and relatives bodily and verbally, is a wretch.
11. One, who when asked a reasonable and beneficial question, gives a detrimental answer or a crooked answer deliberately hiding the true facts, is a wretch.
12. One, who keeps in secret the evil deeds committed by oneself, is a wretch.
13. One who enjoys the treatment offered by others in warm welcome but fails to return the treatment to others when they visit one's house, is a wretch.

14. One, who gives many lame excuses and refuses to donate to donees after inviting them for donation, is a wretch.
15. One, who speaks harshly without donating anything when bhikkhus come for alms food, is a wretch.
16. One, who tricks others with false speech in order to gain something from them, is a wretch.
17. One, who praises oneself and despises others, is a wretch.
18. One, who provokes others to quarrel, neither donates anything by oneself nor appreciates other's donation, possesses a mean desire, pretends to be virtuous, and has no shame and fear to do evil deeds, is a wretch.
19. One, who abuses the Buddha, his disciples and other noble sages, is a wretch.
20. One, who claims himself to be an Arahant although one is not an Arahant, is the meanest wretch.

### ***Four Types of Honouring (Sangaha)***

Honouring or socially assisting others as a token of benevolence is called Sangaha. Only if

the people practise the four ways of honouring others, will there be peace and happiness in the world. These benevolent practices play an important role in social dealings.

1. *Dāna* : Honouring others by providing them with material requisites.
2. *Peyyavajja* : Honouring others with sweet, pleasing words suitable to the time and the occasion.
3. *Atthacariyā* : Honouring others by giving the necessary assistance so that they can accomplish their purpose.
4. *Samānattatā* : Honouring others by treating them socially as one's equal.

### ***Four Factors of Endowments (Sampadā)***

On one occasion in the Buddha's time, a man, son of Koliya, named Dighajānu, said to the Buddha who dwelled in the market town Koliya: "Reverend sir, we, the worldlings, are living together with our families, using various perfumes, and taking delight in jewels like gold and silver. Please deliver a discourse, pointing a way how we can gain



wealth and happiness in the present life as well as in future lives. The Buddha delivered the discourse on "Sampadā." "Sampada" means the qualities with which one must be endowed in order to gain wealth and happiness. This "Sampadā" consists of the four qualities described below:-

1. *Uṭṭhānasampadā* : active and diligent exertion in business undertaking;
2. *Ārakkhasampadā* : the ability to manage wisely what one has earned;
3. *Kalyāṇamitta sampadā* : the ability to associate with a wide circle of good friends.
4. *Samajīvita sampadā* : the ability to live within one's means, i.e., not spending more than what one has earned by lawful means.

### Explanation

1. *Uṭṭhānasampadā* : In this world everybody has to make a living by any suitable means of livelihood. One can be a vagrant without working in any occupation. One must be skilful, diligent and wise in making decisions and in the administration of the

business one is undertaking. These three qualities: skill, diligence, and wisdom make up the endowment Uṭṭhānasampadā.

2. Ārakkhasampadā : The wealth and properties, that one has acquired justfully by active and diligent exertion in business undertaking, must be managed wisely and protected from five kinds of danger: flood, conflagrations, bad rulers, thieves and robbers, and bad sons and daughters who are unworthy heirs. This wise management and protection of the wealth and properties that one has acquired justfully is called the endowment Ārakkhasampadā.
3. Kalyāṇamittasampadā : One must associate with good friends endowed with good qualities such as conviction and morality. One must also associate with those who have achieved success in their business. Only when one associates with such

good companions can one imitate them and strive to achieve the good qualities that they possess in order to attain good morality, conviction, business management, etc. This is called the endowment Kalyāṇamittasampadā.

4. Samajīvitā-sampada : One must keep a systematic account describing the incomes, the outcomes, the receipts and the expenditures. One should divide the net income into four portions. One should use one portion for consumption, another portion for saving, and the remaining two portions for investment. The ability to live within one's means and not spending more than what one has earned by lawful means is called the endowment Samajīvitasampadā.

# **CHAPTER (7)**

## **Basic Abhidhammā**

### ***The Meaning of Abhidhamma***

The word Abhidhamma means the highest teaching of the Buddha. It deals with four ultimate realities (paramattha) which comprise consciousness (Citta), mental concomitants (Cetasika), matter (Rūpa), and extinction of craving (Nibbāna).

### **The Definition of Citta**

The Pāli word "citta" means knowing an object. It means knowing visible objects, knowing audible objects, knowing odourous objects, knowing tangible objects and knowing cognizable objects.

### **Classification of Consciousness**

There are four classes of consciousness, namely:

- (i). Consciousness pertaining to the Sensuous-sphere,
- (ii). Consciousness pertaining to the Form-sphere,

- (iii). Consciousness pertaining to the Formless-sphere,
- (iv). Supramundane consciousness.

### ***1. Fifty-four Kinds of Sensual Consciousness (kāmāvacara citta)***

Kāmāvacara citta is the consciousness which arises mostly in the sensuous realm. It is divided as follows:-

- (a) Twelve types of Unwholesome Consciousness (Akusala citta)
- (b) Eighteen types of Rootless Consciousness (Ahetuka citta)
- (c) Twenty four types of Sublime Consciousness (Kāmasobhana citta)

(a) The twelve types of unwholesome consciousness (Akusala citta) are:-

- eight types of consciousness rooted in greed;
- two types of consciousness rooted in anger; and
- two types of consciousness rooted in ignorance.

(b) The consciousness which is unrooted in lobha (greed), dosa(anger), and moha(ignorance)is



called Ahetuka Citta (unrooted consciousness). The eighteen types of rootless consciousness are:-

- seven types of unwholesome resultant consciousness (Akusalavipāka citta);
  - eight types of rootless wholesome resultant Consciousness (Ahetuka kusala vipāka citta); and
  - three types of rootless functional consciousness (Ahetuka kiriya citta).
- (c) 24 types of Sublime Consciousness are divided into three categories. They are-
- eight types of wholesome consciousness (Mahākusala citta);
  - eight types of wholesome resultant consciousness (Mahā vipāka citta); and
  - eight types of wholesome functional consciousness (Mahā kiriya citta).

## ***2. Fifteen Types of Form sphere Consciousness (Rūpāvacara Citta)***

The consciousness which arises mostly in the realm of celestial beings who have form is Rūpāvacara citta. It is divided into three types:-

- five types of form-sphere wholesome consciousness (Rūpāvacara kusala citta);

- five types of form-sphere resultant consciousness (Rūpāvacara vipāka citta); and
- five types of form-sphere functional consciousness (Rūpāvacara kiryā citta).

### ***3. Twelve Types of Formless Sphere Consciousness (Arūpāvacara Citta)***

The consciousness which arises mostly in the realm of celestial beings who are formless is Arūpāvacara Citta. It is divided into three types:

- four types of Arūpāvacara kusala citta;
- four types of Arūpāvacara kusala citta; and
- four types of Arūpāvacara kusala citta.

### ***4. Eight types of Supramundane Consciousness (Lo kuttara citta) and Forty types of Lokuttara Citta***

The consciousness that enables one to transcend this world of mind and body is called the Supramundane consciousness. It arises only in the eight noble persons. It is divided into eight types in brief and forty types in detail:

- four types of Path consciousness; and
- four types of Fruition consciousness.

In detail, the supramundane consciousness can be divided into forty types: twenty types of

path consciousness and twenty types of Fruition consciousness. Multiplying each (supramundane) consciousness by five Jhāna factors, the supramundane consciousness, amounts to 40.

As the form-sphere consciousness is treated as first Jhāna consciousness, second Jhāna consciousness, and so on, so also can the supramundane consciousness. The Formless-Sphere consciousness is included in the fifth Jhāna.

### *Summary*

The Consciousness is divided into 89 types in brief and 121 types in detail.

The 89 types of consciousness are:

- 54 types of Sensual consciousness;
- 15 types of Form sphere consciousness;
- 12 types of Formless sphere consciousness; and
- 8 types of Supramundane consciousness (in brief).

The 121 types of consciousness are:

- 54 types of Sensual consciousness;
- 15 types of Form sphere consciousness;
- 12 types of Formless sphere consciousness; and

- 40 types of Supramundane consciousness (in detail).

### *The Definition of Cetasika*

Cetasika is the phenomenon which is associated with the mind or consciousness. There are 52 mental states which are called Cetasika or mental concomitants. The cetasikas -

- (1) arise together with consciousness,
- (2) perish together with it,
- (3) have an identical object with it, and
- (4) have a common basis with it.

No consciousness exists apart from its concomitants. Both consciousness and its respective concomitants arise and perish simultaneously. But here are some material qualities that arise and perish simultaneously with the consciousness. In order to exclude them, the third property of having a common object has been attributed. That which possesses these three characteristics must necessarily be endowed with the fourth property-having a common basis.

## ***Fifty-two Types of Mental States***

### **(1) *Seven types of mental states common to all consciousness***

(Universal - 7):-

1. Contact (phassa);
2. Feeling, sensation (Vedanā);
3. Perception (Saññā);
4. Volition (Cetanā);
5. One-pointedness of mind (Ekaggatā);
6. Faculty of vitality (Jīvitindriya); and
7. Attention (Manasikāra).

These 7 mental states are called universal as they arise together with the consciousness whenever it arises.

### **(2) *Six types of Particular Mental States***

(Particular - 6):-

1. Initial application (Vitakka);
2. Sustained application (Vicāra);
3. Resolution; decision (Adhimokkha);
4. Effort, endeavour, energy (Viriya);
5. Joy, delightful satisfaction (Pīti); and
6. The wish to do, the desire to act (Chanda).



These 6 mental states are called particular as they are found only in certain classes of consciousness.

Thus these 13 mental states should be understood as Aññasamāna because they may be either moral or immoral according to the type of common consciousness in which they are found.

### (3) *Fourteen Types of Unwholesome Mental States*

- |                |   |  |
|----------------|---|--|
| 1. Moha        | = | ignorance; delusion;                         |
| 2. Ahīrika     | = | shamelessness;                               |
| 3. Anottappa   | = | fearlessness;                                |
| 4. Uddhacca    | = | Restlessness; distraction of mind;           |
| 5. Lobha       | = | greed; attachment;                           |
| 6. Diṭṭhi      | = | misbelief;                                   |
| 7. Māna        | = | conceit;                                     |
| 8. Dosa        | = | anger; hatred;                               |
| 9. Issā        | = | jealousy;                                    |
| 10. Macchariya | = | stinginess;                                  |
| 11. Kukkucca   | = | remorse;                                     |
| 12. Thina      | = | sloth;                                       |
| 13. Middha     | = | torpor;                                      |
| 14. Vicikicchā | = | doubt; scepticism; vacillation; uncertainty. |

**(4) *Twenty five types of Sobhaṇacetasika which participate in doing good deeds.***

(a) Nineteen types of Sobhaṇa-sādhāraṇa cetasika, which participate in doing every good deed.

(Beautiful 19):

1. Saddhā = conviction; confidence;
2. Sati = mindfulness;
3. Hīri = moral shame;
4. Ottappa = moral dread;
5. Alobha = absence of attachment;
6. Adosa = absence of anger; loving-kindness;
7. Tatramajjhataṭṭhā = keeping mental state in equanimity;
8. Kāyapassaddhi = tranquility of mental states;
9. Citta passaddhi = tranquility of Consciousness;
10. Kāyalahutā = lightness of mental states;
11. Cittalahutā = lightness of consciousness
12. Kāya mudutā = softness of mental states;
13. Citta mudutā = softness of consciousness;

14. Kāya Kāmmaññatā = preparedness of mental states;
15. Citta kammaññatā = preparedness of mind;
16. Kāyapāguññatā = adaptability of mental states;
17. Citta pāguññatā = adaptability of consciousness;
18. Kāyujukatā = straightness of mental states; and
19. Cittujukatā = straightness of consciousness.

These nineteen mental states are called wholesome mental states because they arise together with all wholesome consciousnesses.

### ***(b) Three Abstinenances***

1. Sammāvācā (Right Speech) = abstaining from the four kinds of evil speech;
2. Sammākammanta (Right Action) = abstaining from the three kinds of evil action; and
3. Sammā-ājīva (Right livelihood) = abstaining from wrong livelihood.

These three mental states are called "Abstinences" because they arise together with the consciousness refraining from evil deeds.

**(c) *Two Illimitables***

1. Karuṇā = compassion; and

2. Muditā = sympathetic joy

These two mental states are called illimitables (Appamaññācetasika) because the object of these two mental states is the infinite number of beings. They are also called Brahmavihāra, sublime modes of living. Of course, there are four modes of sublime living; Mettā, Karuṇā, Muditā, and Uppekkhā. Mettā is represented by Adosa and Uppekkhā is represented by Tatramajjhataṭṭā. Hence, only two are mentioned here.

**(d) *Wisdom***

Paññindriya = faculty of wisdom

Nineteen beautifuls, three abstinences, two illimitables and wisdom, are called wholesome mental states because they arise together with only wholesome consciousness.

***Summary***

There are altogether fifty two types of mental states--common thirteen, unwholesome fourteen and wholesome twenty five.

### ***Important Mental States (cetasikas)***

#### ***Cetanā***

Cetanā is the stimulating force (urging, exhortation) to do evil or good deeds. If one's cetanā or volition is strong, his consciousness is serious in doing anything. If one's cetanā or volition force is weak, his consciousness is mild in doing anything. Volition is also called "Kamma" because it is the main source of every action whether good or bad.

#### ***Viriya***

Viriya means effort, endeavour or energy. To do every action diligently without hesitation, is the nature of Viriya. Great and grand deeds cannot be accomplished without Viriya.

#### ***Chanda***

Chanda is the desire to do something good or bad. Great and grand tasks cannot be introduced without chanda.

#### ***Moha***

Moha means ignorance or delusion or bewilderment, not knowing something as they truly are. It clouds the true nature of an object. When one is overwhelmed by moha, one cannot discriminate right from wrong. He may think what is right to be wrong and what is wrong to be right.



The characteristic of concealing the true nature of mind and matter and the four noble truths is the nature of moha.

### ***Ahīrika***

Ahīrika is shamelessness to do evil deeds. The persons having this nature think that "to do evil deeds" is the highest prestige for them.

### ***Anottappa***

Anottappa means fearlessness to do evil deeds. To do evil deeds regardless of their evil consequences is the nature of Anottappa.

### ***Lobha***

Lobha means attachment to the enjoyment of sensual pleasure. There is an old Myanmar saying, "The more one gets, the more one needs." The desire to attain Nibbāna, the desire to attain the Path-consciousness, the desire to be qualified in knowledge, the desire to give charity to the poor are not lobha, but they are chanda.

### ***Māyā (deceit)***

Māyā means concealing one's offences by deceiving others. Māyā is a kind of Lobha.

***Sātheya (pretension)***

Sātheya means the pretension as if one were a man having great and grand prestige or he were a gentle one, a wise one, a noble one. Also sātheya is a kind of lobha.

***Diṭṭhi (Micchā diṭṭhi) wrong view***

Diṭṭhi means not believing in Kamma and its result by viewing thus: good results do not arise although good deeds are done, evil results do not arise although evil deeds are done.

***Dosa***

Dosa means hatred or anger. Despair, unhappiness, fear, ill-will and peevishness describe the nature of dosa.

***Issā***

Issā means jealousy or envy. It has the characteristic of envying others' success and prosperity.

***Macchhariya***

Macchhariya means stinginess, meanness, niggardliness. Being unwilling to let others have the same prosperity or the same dignity or the same authority that one possesses.

***Saddhā***

Saddhā means well established conviction in the Buddha, the Dhamma, the Saṅgha and Kamma and its results. It can purify the mind from its stains.

***Sati***

Sati means mindfulness, or heedfulness, or awareness of arising and passing away of mind and matter.

***Hīrī, Ottappa***

Hīrī means moral shame to do evil. Ottappa means moral dread to do evil. These two are called the two guardian principles of the world. Unless these two dhamma exist in the world, there will prevail no morality of conduct.

***Alobha***

Alobha means absence of greed, or detachment. Giving one's properties to others is the nature of Alobha.

***Adosa***

Adosa means the absence of hatred. It is loving-kindness, forbearance or forgiveness. Wishing for the well-beings of others is the nature of Adosa.

***Amoha***

Amoha means absence of ignorance, delusion, bewilderment. Capability of realizing right as right and wrong as wrong is the nature of Amoha.

***3. Twenty-eight kinds of Matter***

There are twenty-eight kinds of matter. Of these, four are essential elements known as Mahābhūta-rūpa and the rest are dependent elements known as Upādā rūpa.

***1. Four Essential Elements (Mahābhūta-rūpa)***

They are:-

Pathavī = the element of extension with the characteristics of hardness and softness;

Āpo = the element of cohesion with characteristics of fluidity and cohesiveness;

Tejo = the element of kinetic energy with the characteristics of heat and cold;

Vāyo = the element of motion with the characteristics of pushing and supporting.

## 2. *Five Sensitive Elements (Pasāda Rūpa)*

1. Cakkhupasāda = the sensitive element in the eye;
2. Sotapasāda = the sensitive element in the ear;
3. Ghānapasāda = the sensitive element in the nose;
4. Jivhāpasāda = the sensitive element in the tongue;  
and
5. Kāyapasāda = the sensitive element in the body.

## 3. *Seven Sense Elements*

1. Rūpāramana = visible element;
2. Saddhāramana = audible elements;
3. Gandhāramana = odorous element;
4. Rassāramana = taste element;
5. phoṭhabbāramana = tangible element.  
(pathavī, tejo, vāyo)

## 4. *Two Sex Elements (Bhāva rūpa)*

1. Feminine sex element (Itthibhāva rūpa) and
2. Masculine sex element (Pumbhāva rūpa).



### ***5. One Heart Element (Hadaya rūpa)***

1. Heart element (hadaya - vatthu).

### ***6. Physical Vital Element (Jivita-rūpa)***

Physical vital element (jivitarūpa)

### ***7. Nutritious Element (Āhāra-rūpa)***

***Nutritious element (Kabalikāra-āhāra)***

#### ***1. Limiting Element or Space Element (Pariccheda rūpa; Ākāsadhātu)***

#### ***2. Two Animating Elements (Viññātti rūpa)***

1. Bodily animating element (Kāyā-viññatti),
2. verbally-animating element (vacī-viññatti)

#### ***3. Five Mutable Elements (Vikārarūpa)***

1. The element of lightness = lahutā,
2. The element of softness = mudutā, and
3. The element of adaptability = kammaññatā
- 4,5. Two animating elements make up the remaining two mutable elements.

#### ***4. Four Characteristic Elements***

These four elements are:-

- (1) Initial arising element (Upacayarūpa),
- (2) Continuous arising element (Santati),
- (3) Decaying element (Jaratārūpa),
- (4) Dissolving element (Aniccatārūpa).

#### ***Conditioned Elements (Nipphanna rūpā)***

The four essential elements, the five sensitive elements, the seven sense elements (to be counted as four essential elements), the two sex elements, the heart element, the physical vital element and the nutritious element are called conditioned elements (Nipphannarūpa), because these eighteen elements are conditioned by Kamma (volitional action), Citta (consciousness), Utu (heat) and Āhāra (nutriment).

#### ***Unconditioned Elements (Anipphanna rūpa)***

The limiting element, the five mutable elements and the four characteristic elements are called unconditioned elements (Anipphannarūpa), because these ten elements are not conditioned by Kamma (volitional action), Citta (consciousness), Utu (heat) and Āhāra (nutriment).

### ***Five Aggregates of Existence (Five Khandhas)***

An individual is made up of consciousness (Citta), mental states (Cetasikas) and matter (Rūpa). The combination of consciousness and mental states is called mind (nāma), because they are inclined towards the senses as they can be aware of the senses.

Again mind and matter can be divided into five aggregates of existence. They are:-

- (1) Physical aggregate = the combination  
(Rupakkhandhā) of 28 kinds of  
matter;
- (2) The aggregate of sensation = the combi-  
(Vedanakkhandhā) nation of all sen-  
sations;
- (3) The aggregate of perception = the  
(Saññākkhandhā) combination of  
all perceptions;
- (4) The aggregate of = the combination  
volitional activities of all mental  
(Saṅkhārakkhandhā) states except  
sensation and  
perception; and
- (5) The aggregate of = the combination  
consciousness of all conscious-  
(Viññānakkhandhā) ness.

#### ***4. Extinction of Craving (Nibbāna)***

Nibbāna is the fourth ultimate reality that really exists in nature. It is the extinction of craving. This implies that Nibbāna is free from all defilements.

Since the defilements are the cause of all miseries, all miseries will cease when all defilements are extinguished. So, when all defilements and miseries cease to exist, there will be ever lasting perfect peace, which is Nibbāna. To realize Nibbāna is the aim of all Buddhists.

## CHAPTER (8)

### Moral Culture

Every country or every race has its own moral culture which is the characteristic of that country or that race. As for Myanmar, it has its own culture which is based on Buddhism. This chapter is concerned with Buddhist moral manners, namely: courtesy (Polite manners), gentleness in speech (Verbal politeness) and good thought (Mental politeness).

#### ***Polite Manners***

- (1) When one visits a certain pagoda or a certain monastery, one should wear proper dress. One must take off one's hat, umbrella and any footwear before one enters the precinct of a pagoda or a monastery.
- (2) One should not behave improperly in the precinct of a pagoda or a monastery or in the presence of an image of the Buddha or a monk.
- (3) When one takes a seat near Buddhist monks or the virtuous or the aged, one must take a suitable place free from six faults of location:



being too far, being too near, being at the front, being at the back, being at a high place and being against the wind.

- (4) When one passes by Buddhist monks, the virtuous or the aged or passes through an audience, one should go slowly leaning one's body and bowing one's head.
- (5) When one gives something to someone or takes something from someone, one should give or take with one's two hands even though it may be a small thing.
- (6) When one pays homage to Buddhist monks, parents or teachers, one should touch the floor or the ground with one's two knees, two hands and forehead.
- (7) When one comes across Buddhist monks on the way, one should stand aside and pay obeisance to them taking off one's hat, umbrella, footwear and putting two palms together on the forehead.
- (8) When one goes away from the presence of Buddhist monks, teachers, parents and the aged, one should make four or five backward steps with joined-palms and turn to one's desired direction.
- (9) When one comes across Buddhist monks, teachers, parents and the aged on a narrow

path, one should stop one's stepping and give way for them to pass. One should not jostle against them nor overtake them.

- (10) One should generously offer one's seat to Buddhist monks, the aged, the infirm, and nuns while travelling by train or in a bus or in a boat.
- (11) While Buddhist monks, teachers and parents are taking rest or sleeping, one should not disturb them in any way.
- (12) If necessary, one should help Buddhist monks, nuns, the aged and the infirm by carrying their packages on the way.
- (13) When one listens to the Dhamma, one should take off one's hat in honour of the virtues of Dhamma. If one wears Myanmar turban, one should expose one's hair. Even if one listens to the discourse from a tape recorder, one should put it on a high place. One should sit kneeling, joining one's two palms together in the meditation posture.
- (14) One should place the Buddha's image, the Buddha's picture and the Buddhist scriptures on a high and noble place. If one wants to hold them, one should pay homage to them with joined-palms first. One should not put them down on the floor nor take them under one's arms.

- (15) One should not greet Buddhist monks and nuns by shaking their hands nor gesture to them. One should greet them respectfully with joined-palms.
- (16) A woman should not rearrange her garment nor beautify herself before Buddhist monks or the virtuous or the aged.
- (17) A woman should not go to Buddhist monks and the aged in unsuitable dress which does not conform with tradition.
- (18) A woman should not go to a Buddhist monk while he is in his private room. If it is necessary to go to a monk, she should take a man along with her.
- (19) A woman should not pay homage to a Buddhist monk by spreading her hair on the ground nor by touching the monk's feet with her hand.
- (20) When one meets others on the way, one should greet them either with joined palms or with a bow or with a smile respectfully.
- (21) When one wants to approach the bhikkhus, teachers, parents and the aged, one should make one's body clean in advance.
- (22) One should not spit nor blow the nose carelessly at public places such as the pagoda

platform, the precinct of the monastery, the hospital, the school and so on.

- (23) One should not cough nor sneeze turning to someone. If one wants to do so, one should go out of the audience or clear it by blowing into a handkerchief. If one wants to fart, one should go away from the audience.
- (24) While someone is having a meal, one should not hawk nor blow his nose in a place where the former can hear or see.

### ***Verbal Politeness***

- (1) The Buddha should be addressed respectfully by the term: "The supreme Buddha" or "The Enlightened One"; not by the term "Gotama" (or) "Buddha."
- (2) One should not say that a shrine, an image of the Buddha, a Buddhist monk or a nun is "beautiful" or "pretty." One should use the words 'Sublime', 'glorious' or "Venerable" instead.
- (3) If one is to say words of approval or denial while speaking with Buddhist monks and novices, one should reply respectfully and humbly: 'Certainly, Venerable Sir', "No, Venerable Sir.", and

with parents and teachers: "Yes Sir" (or) "No Sir."

- (4) If one wants to address an elderly Buddhist monk or a learned one, one should address "Sayadaw" or "Venerable." For a young Buddhist monk and a novice, one uses "Reverend Sir."
- (5) Moreover, an elderly Buddhist monk or a learned one should not be addressed by his name. He should be addressed by his birth-place or residential place such as "Venerable Mahāsi Sayadaw", "Venerable Bago Sayadaw", and so on.
- (6) A Buddhist monk or a novice used to call an old man or a youth "Dagāgyi or Dagālay", and an old woman or a young woman "Dagāmagyi" or "Dagāmalay."

### ***Mental Politeness***

- (1) One should not wish to get others' properties in an improper way.
- (2) One should not breed a malicious mind to destroy others' properties and virtues.
- (3) When one comes across someone, old or young, one should cultivate one's (mettā) loving-kindness towards them thus: "May he be well and happy."



- (4) Believing the law of Kamma and its results, one should cultivate a sympathetic mind towards all.
- (5) One should not be jealous of superior ones, nor should one humiliate inferior ones, nor should one compete with companions of the same status.

### *The Civilized Terms Concerning Alms-food*

- (1) When Buddhist monks and novices go around for alms-food, it should be called "collecting alms-food." If one cannot offer alms-food, one should apologise, "Would you mind going ahead?"
- (2) If one wants to offer some food and drink to a Buddhist monk or a novice, one should give them to him with two hands respectfully.

When one behaves according to the above rules, one will obtain merit and auspiciousness. One will be well-known as a civilized one in this existence. Moreover, one will enjoy bliss, happiness and pleasure in future existences.

The people of Myanmar, abiding by the Buddhist Teachings, are polite in behaviour, speech and thought. They can live peacefully through many generations.

CHAPTER (9)

The Pāli Alphabet

In Myanmar and Roman Characters

8-Vowels

a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	e	o
အ	အာ	ဇ္ဇ	ဤ	ဥ	ဦ	ဧ	ဩ

Vowel Final Form

-	-ာ, -ါ	ဝ	ဝ	ု	ူ	ေ-	ေ-ာ, ေ-ါ
---	--------	---	---	---	---	----	----------

33 Consonants

25 Group Letters

	First	Second	Thrid	Fourth	Fifth
<b>Ka-group</b>	k	kh	g	gh	ṅ
	က	ခ	ဂ	ဂ	င
<b>Ca-group</b>	c	ch	j	jh	ñ
	စ	ဆ	ဇ	ဇ	ည
<b>Ta-group</b>	t	th	d	dh	ṇ
	တ	ထ	ဒ	သ	ဏ

	First	Second	Thrid	Fourth	Fifth
<b>Ta-group</b>	t	th	d	dh	n
	တ	ထ	ဒ	ဓ	န
<b>Pa-group</b>	p	ph	b	bh	m
	ပ	ဖ	ဗ	ဗ	မ

8 Non-group Letters

<b>Non-gourp</b>	y	r	l	v	s
	ယ	ရ	လ	ဝ	ဆ
		h	l	m	
		တ	ဇ	ဆ	

4 Consonant Clusters

Some consonant clusters can be formed by putting four consonants, y=ယ, r=ရ, v=ဝ and h=တ, after some consonants as follows:

ky	khy	gy	py	phy	by	my	ty	dy
ကျ	ခ	ဂ	င	စ	ဗ	မ	တ	ဒ
kr	chr	gr	tr	pr	dra	ndr		
ကြ	ခ	ဂ	င	ဗ	ဒ	န		
kv	khv	tv	dv					
ကွ	ခွ	ဂွ	ဒွ					
ñh	ṇh	nh	mh	lh	yh	vh		
န	တ	ဒ	မ	ဇ	ယ	ဝ		

### Only one Final Consonant (ṃ)

In Pāḷi language, there is only one final consonant(ṃ) which follows three short vowels:

am̐ = အံ	im̐ = အိ°	um̐ = အုံ
မင်္ဂလာ	တာဝတိံသ	ဒါတုံ
maṅgala	Tāvatiṃsa	dātuṃ

### Eleven Syllables

A counsonant or consonant-cluster can be formed into eleven syllables as follows;-

ka	kā	ki	kī	ku	kū
က	ကာ	ကိ	ကီ	ကု	ကူ
ke	ko	kaṃ	kiṃ	kum̐	
ကေ	ကော	ကံ	ကိ°	ကုံ	
kha	khā	khi	khi	khu	khū
ခ	ခါ	ခိ	ခိ	ခု	ခူ
khe	kho	khaṃ	khiṃ	khum̐	
ခေ	ခေါ	ခံ	ခိ°	ခုံ	
la	la	li	lī	lu	lū
လ	လော	လိ	လီ	လု	လူ
le	lo	laṃ	liṃ	lum̐	
လေ	လော	လံ	လိ°	လုံ	

kya kyā khi kyī kyu kyū kye

ကျ ကျာ ကျိ ကျီ ကျု ကျူ ကျေ

kyo kyam̐ kyim̐ kyum

ကျော ကျံ ကျိံ ကျုံ

kra krā kri krī kru krū

ကြ ကြာ ကြိ ကြီ ကြု ကြူ

kre kro kram̐ krim̐ krum̐

ကြော ကြောံ ကြိံ ကြိံံ ကြုံ

kva kvā kvi kvī

ကွ ကွာ ကွိ ကွီ

kve ---- kvam̐ kvim̐ kvum̐

ကွေ ကွံ ကွိံ ကွုံ

hma hmā hmi hmī hmu hmū hme

မှ မှာ မှိ မှီ မှု မှူ မေ






hmo hmam̐ hmim̐ hmum̐

မှော မံ မိံ မုံ



### ***Conjunct-Consonants***

In the poly - syllabic words, there may be two consonants between two vowels. The two consonants are called Conjunct-Consonants or Double Consonants. Conjunct - Consonants are generally written one over another in Myanmar script and one after another in Romanised Pāli --

 = kk ,  = kkh ,  = gg ,  
 = ggh , ----- ,  = mm etc

### ***How to Pair two Consonants***

In order to pair the two consonants twenty five group-Consonants are divided into five series: Ka-series, ca-series, ṭa-series, ta-series, and pa-series. Each series must be subdivided into three groups: voiceless letters (Aghosa Akkharas), voiced - letters (Ghosa Akkharas) and Nasal-letters (Nāsika Akkharas). In each series, the first and the second letters are voiceless the third and the fourth letters are voiced and the fifth letters are nasal.

In voiceless and voiced groups, the first and the third letters are Non-aspirate letters (Sithila Akkharas) and the second and the fourth letters are Aspirate letters (Dhanita Akkharas).

The first and the third Non-aspirate letters and the fifth nasal letters can be paired between themselves as conjunct-consonants. The first and the third Non-aspirate letters can be paired to the second and the fourth Aspirate letters to form conjunct-consonants. The fifth letters can be paired to the former four letters in its series.

**ka-*vagga*** cakka yakkha vagga byaggha ---

စက္က ယက္ခ ဝက္ခ ဗျတ္တ

caṅkama kankhā maṅgalā saṅgha ---

စင်္ကမ ကင်္ခါ မင်္ဂလာ သင်္ဃ

**ca-*vaggas*** sacca maccha majja majjhima Paññā

သစ္စ မစ္ဆ မဇ္ဇ မဇ္ဈိမ ပညာ

Pañca puñcha vañjana vañjha

ပဉ္စ ပုဉ္စ ပဉ္ဇန ပဉ္စ

**ṭa-*vagga*** vaṭṭa diṭṭha aḍḍa vuddha āciṇṇa

ဝဋ္ဋ ဒိဋ္ဌ ဖဋ္ဌ ဝုဇ္ဈ အာစိဏ္ဏ

kaṇṭaka kaṇṭha khaṇḍa -----

ကဏ္ဍက ကဏ္ဏ ခဏ္ဏ -----

**ta-*vagga*** citta hattha sadda saddhā anna

စိတ္တ တတ္ထ သဒ္ဓ သဒ္ဓါ အန္န

danta gantha vandana khandha

ဒန္တ ဂန္ထ ဝန္တနာ ခန္ဓ

<b>Pa.vagga</b>	sippa	puppha	dibba
	သိပ္ပံ	ပုပ္ဖ	ဒိဗ္ဗ
	dubbhikkha	kamma	
	ဒုဗ္ဗက္ခ	ကမ္မ	
	sampanna	samphapphalasa	
	သမ္ပန္န	သမ္ပပ္ပလောပ	
	udumbara	kumbhaṇḍa	
	ဥဒုမ္ဗရ	ကုမ္ဘဏ္ဍ	

### ***Conjunct-Consonant in Non-group-letters***

Four Non-group letters - y, l, s and h can be paired to form conjunct-consonants.

<b>e.g</b>	uyyāna	dullabha	phassa	mayha
	ဥယျာန	ဒုလ္လဘ	ဖဿ	မယှ
	daḥha	bahvābadha		
	ဒဠ	ဗဟ္ဗာဗာဓ		

**Note-** The above mentioned four consonat clusters may be considered as Conjunct-Consonants though they disobey the conjunct-consonant rules in pairing letters.

There are some irregular conjunct - consonants.

<b>eg.</b>	pañha,	taṇhā,	nhāna,	tumha
	ပဉ္စ	တဏှာ	နှာန	တုမ္မ
	brahma	yasmā		
	ဗြဟ္မ	ယဿ		

### ***Conjunct-Consonant Reading***

In conjunct consonants, the first consonant must be considered as final consonant. But in Pāli language the final consonants are mute i.e. they are not pronounced as in English and German. The final consonants change the sounds of the front vowels.

In order to make correct pronunciation the final Consonants must be divided into two classes. - namely Nasal finals and Stop finals. ṇ, ñ, n, ṇ, m, y, l, should be noted as Nasal - finals and the rest are considered as stop-finals. The Nasal-finals and the stop-finals changed the front vowels into long sounds and stop-sounds respectively:

(1) The final consonants change the final vowel 'a', into '- at' and '- an.'

စက္က	ယက္ခ	မဂ္ဂ	အနတ္တ	အင်္ဂ	အယျက
sakka	yakkha	magga	anaggha	anga	ayyaka
သစ္စ	ဂစ္ဆမိ	မဇ္ဈ	မဇ္ဈိမ	ပညာ	သလ္လာပ
sacca	gacchāmi	majja	majjhima	paññā	sallāpa

(2) The final consonants change the front vowel.

'i -' into '-it' and '-in'

ဒိဋ္ဌ	ဒိဋ္ဌာ	တိဏ္ဏ	စိတ္တ	တိတ္ထ	မိဒ္ဓ
diṭṭha	khidḍā	tinṇa	citta	tittha	midda

ဒိန္န            နိယျာနိက  
dinna        niyyānika

(3)The final consonants change the front vowel  
'u'        into        '-ut'        and        '-un.'

သုပ္ပ	ပုပ္ပ	ဒုပ္ပ	ဒုပ္ပိက္ခ
suppa	puppha	dubbaca	dubbhikkha
ကုမ္ဘ	ဥယျာန	ဒုလ္လဘ	
kumbha	ayyāna	dullabha	

### Note

There are no finals which can change the vowel (a) into -et, -in sound in Roman script. So all ka-group finals are read -at, -an in Roman script.

ဦးသဇ္ဇန	ဦးပညာဇောတ
U sajjaṇa	U Paññājota

(2)the ca-group finals change the front vowel  
(a) into '-it', '-in' sound in Myanmar script and '-at', '-an' sound in Roman script

သဇ္ဇာ	မဇ္ဇ	အဇ္ဇ	လဇ္ဇိ	မဇ္ဈိမ	သညာ
saccā	maccha	ajja	lajjī	majjhima	saññā





Namo tassa Bhagavato Arahato  
Sammāsambudhassa

INDEX

A

<i>Abhaya dāna</i>	204
<i>Abhidhammā</i>	44,236,248
<i>Abhijjā</i>	189
<i>Abrahmacariyā</i>	157,158
<i>Adhimokka</i>	287
<i>Adhiṭṭhāna</i>	188
<i>Adinnādāna</i>	17,281
<i>Adosa</i>	295
<i>Ādittapariyāya Sutta</i>	56
<i>Adultery</i>	144,146,148
<i>Ageing</i>	56
<i>Aggika bhāradvāja</i>	274
<i>Aggohamasami lokassa</i>	27
<i>Aggregate of Consciousness</i>	301
<i>Aggregate of Perception</i>	300
<i>Aggregate of Sensation</i>	300
<i>Aggregate of Volitional Activities</i>	300
<i>Agony</i>	56
<i>Ahambhānde</i>	119,133
<i>Ahāra</i>	299

<i>Ahāra Rūpa</i>	298
<i>Ahetuka Citta</i>	282,283
<i>Ahetuka Kiriya Citta</i>	283
<i>Ahetuka Kusalavipāka Citta</i>	283
<i>Ahīrika</i>	288,293
<i>Āhuneyyo</i>	179
<i>Ajapāla Sattāha</i>	45
<i>Ajātasatthu</i>	92,94,98,116
<i>Akāliko</i>	178
<i>Akusala citta</i>	283
<i>Akusala kamma</i>	183,187
<i>Akusala kammapatha</i>	189
<i>Akusalavipāka Citta</i>	283
<i>Alābha</i>	270
<i>Ākāsa dhātu</i>	298
<i>Alobha</i>	295
<i>Alms-bowl</i>	33,73,82
<i>Alms-food</i>	34,46,58,60, 67,72,73,75, 76,79,83,97, 203,206,211, 217,232,233, 235,308
<i>Alms-round</i>	83,72,274
<i>Āḷavaka</i>	91
<i>Āḷavī</i>	90
<i>Āḷāra</i>	35,50
<i>Āloka Cave</i>	223

<i>Amba</i>	105
<i>Ambapālī</i>	97
<i>Amoha</i>	296
<i>Āmabhande</i>	153,157
<i>Āmisa dāna</i>	204
<i>Anatta Lakkhaṇa Sutta</i>	52
<i>Anavajjani Kammāni</i>	266
<i>Anākulāca Kammantā</i>	261,266
<i>Anāthapiṇḍika</i>	78,79,80,81, 82,259,269, 274
<i>Aniccatā Rūpa</i>	299
<i>Animisa Sattāha</i>	43
<i>Anipphanna Rūpa</i>	299
<i>Anottappa</i>	288,293
<i>Anuggahita Dāna</i>	213,215
<i>Anupahacca Dāna</i>	213,215
<i>Anuruddhā</i>	78
<i>Anuttaram Puññakkhettaṃ</i>	
<i>Lokassa</i>	179
<i>Anuttaropurisadhammasārati</i>	175,177
<i>Anomadassi</i>	136,137,138
<i>Ānanda</i>	78,97,98,101, 102,219,221, 239
<i>Ānāpāna</i>	39
<i>Aṅgapariccāga</i>	22
<i>Aṅgulimāla</i>	91

<i>Aṅgulimāla Sutta</i>	241
<i>Aṅguttara Nikāya</i>	164
<i>Añjalīkaraniyo</i>	179
<i>Aññasamāna</i>	288
<i>Apacāyana</i>	190
<i>Aparacetanā</i>	205
<i>Aparājita Pallaṅka</i>	38
<i>Apāya</i>	120,122
<i>Appamādena</i>	84
<i>Appamādosadamesu</i>	261, 267
<i>Appamaññā Cetasika</i>	291
<i>Āpo</i>	296
<i>Araham</i>	175, 176
<i>Arahat</i>	8,64,66,112, 125,137,194, 209,221, 222, 227,239,276
<i>Arahatship</i>	56,99,138
<i>Arahatta magga ñāṇa</i>	39,88
<i>Arakkha sampadā</i>	278,279
<i>Ariya saccāna dhassanam</i>	261,270
<i>Ariyā</i>	78,110,128, 180,270
<i>Ariyāhood</i>	61
<i>Ariyā Path</i>	52
<i>Ariyā Saṃgha</i>	174
<i>Arūpa-brahma</i>	50,123
<i>Arūpavacara Citta</i>	284

<i>Āratīpāpā</i>	261,266
<i>Asaṅkhyeyya</i>	5,21,24,38
<i>Asaññatta-brahma</i>	123
<i>Ascetic</i>	6,9,10,12,35, 50,51,55,61, 64,80,91,109, 110
<i>Asevanācabālānam</i>	260,263
<i>Assaji</i>	36,52,62
<i>Asurakāra</i>	122
<i>Āsavekkhaya</i>	39
<i>Āsoka</i>	116
<i>Āsokam</i>	262,270
<i>Āsokārāma Monastery</i>	222
<i>Attachment</i>	218,289,293
<i>Attention</i>	287
<i>Atthacariyā</i>	277
<i>Atthasamapaṇidhica</i>	260,264
<i>Aṭṭhakkhaṇas</i>	120
<i>Audible Element</i>	297
<i>Auspiciousness</i>	205,236,262, 263,271,308
<i>Austerities</i>	34,36, 269, 288
<i>Avaruddhaka</i>	127
<i>Ayassa</i>	270
<i>Ayuvaḍḍanakumāra</i>	126,128



**B**

<i>Bahukāra Sutta</i>	231
<i>Baka</i>	91
<i>Bārāṇasī</i>	167,168,216
<i>Beautiful-19</i>	289
<i>Benevolence</i>	196
<i>Bewilderment</i>	96,199,296
<i>Bhaddiya</i>	36,52,78
<i>Bhagavā</i>	175,177,259
<i>Bhagu</i>	78
<i>Bhallika</i>	47
<i>Bhāhusacañca</i>	260,265
<i>Bhaṇḍa</i>	105
<i>Bhariya paricāga</i>	22
<i>Bhāvanā</i>	190
<i>Bhāva Rūpa</i>	297
<i>Bhikkhave</i>	84
<i>Bhikkhu</i>	94,96,97,216, 223,225,243, 248,257,276, 305
<i>Bhikkhuhood</i>	85
<i>Bhikkhunī</i>	78
<i>Bhoga</i>	105
<i>Bhoga byasana</i>	125
<i>Bimbisāra</i>	34,57,58,59, 60,88,138, 139

<i>Blame</i>	270
<i>Bodhi</i>	1,37,38,43, 44,48,50,209, 249
<i>Bodhisatta</i>	10,11,14,15, 33,34,45,168
<i>Brahma</i>	31,40,49,51, 68,69,112, 180,259
<i>Brahmacariyañca</i>	261,269
<i>Brahmadatta</i>	167
<i>Brahma Realm</i>	231
<i>Brahmavihāra</i>	195,291
<i>Brahmin</i>	10,61,88,111, 115,274
<i>Breathing-in</i>	38,39
<i>Breathing-out</i>	38,39
<i>Buddha</i>	1,25,28,46, 47,48,97,111, 132,140,205, 206,207,251, 263,267,274, 302
<i>Buddhahood</i>	34,36,38,91, 183
<i>Buddha Images</i>	248,304
<i>Buddhamṃ pujemi</i>	119
<i>Buddhānussati</i>	181

<i>Buddhatthacariyā</i>	22
<i>Buddhism</i>	1,243
<i>Buddhist</i>	1,203,211, 249,301,302
<i>Buddhist Council</i>	116
<i>Buddhist Lent</i>	212,248
<i>Buddho</i>	175,177
<i>Buddho bodeyyam</i>	8,48
<i>Buddhuppādo dullabho</i>	
<i>Lokasamim</i>	84
<i>Byasana</i>	121,125
<i>Byāpāda</i>	189
<b>C</b>	
<i>Cakkhupasāda</i>	297
<i>Candakinnri Jātaka</i>	74
<i>Candavati</i>	136
<i>Caṅkama Sattāha</i>	44
<i>Cariyā</i>	21
<i>Cāpāla</i>	102
<i>Causes of becoming a Wretch</i>	274
<i>Causes of Downfall</i>	271,272
<i>Celestial Beings</i>	50,135,183
<i>Celestial Realm</i>	75,205,209, 210
<i>Cetanā</i>	287,292
<i>Cetasika</i>	281,286,292,

	300
<i>Cetiyaṅgana</i>	236
<i>Chanda</i>	287,292,293
<i>Charity</i>	2,9,10,12, 119,149,201, 203,204,266, 267,293
<i>Channa</i>	31,33
<i>Chief Disciples</i>	63
<i>Chronicle of the Buddha</i>	71,237
<i>Ciñcamānavikā</i>	93
<i>Citta</i>	88,281,299, 300
<i>Cittalahutā</i>	289
<i>Citta kammaññatā</i>	290
<i>Citta Mudutā</i>	289
<i>Citta paguññātā</i>	290
<i>Citta passaddhi</i>	289
<i>Cittujukatā</i>	290
<i>Clinging</i>	218
<i>Commentary</i>	226,239
<i>Compassion</i>	11,130,161, 195,232,238, 291
<i>Conceit</i>	91,92,288
<i>Concentration</i>	95,105,167, 172,199,223, 237
<i>Conditioned</i>	40,101,104.

	112
<i>Conditioned Elements</i>	299
<i>Confidence</i>	253,289
<i>Congregation</i>	64
<i>Consciousness</i>	281,282,285, 286,287,288, 289,299,300
<i>Consecration</i>	75
<i>Contact</i>	287
<i>Continuous Arising Element</i>	299
<i>Conviction</i>	2,216,229, 231,265,289, 295
<i>Courtesy</i>	302
<i>Covetousness</i>	189,190
<i>Craving</i>	196,281,301
<i>Cūlakamma Vibhaṅga Sutta</i>	185
<i>Cūḷanībrahmadatta</i>	13
<i>Cūḷasubhaddā</i>	79
<i>Cunda</i>	101,105,107
<i>Custodian of the Dhamma</i>	226

## D

<i>Daily routine duties</i>	82
<i>Dakkhineyyo</i>	179
<i>Dassana</i>	159
<i>Dāna</i>	190,204,277
<i>Daññañca</i>	161,266



<i>Dāna pārami</i>	21
<i>Dānaparamattha pārami</i>	21
<i>Dāna Upa pāramī</i>	21
<i>Death</i>	56,200
<i>Deathlessness</i>	61
<i>Decaying element</i>	299
<i>Deceit</i>	293
<i>Defilements</i>	8,39,52,88, 113,159,166, 231,271,301
<i>Delusion</i>	126,137,187, 288,292,296
<i>Desa</i>	25
<i>Detachment</i>	295
<i>Deva</i>	30,31,34,40, 49,51,68,69, 112,127,180, 200,259,263, 271
<i>Devadatta</i>	15,92
<i>Dibbcakkhuñāṇa</i>	39
<i>Devotees</i>	47,93,96,97, 101,118,127, 148,169,235, 265
<i>Devotion</i>	253
<i>Diṭṭhi</i>	288,294
<i>Diṭṭhi byasana</i>	125

<i>Diṭṭhijukamma</i>	91
<i>Dīghalaṅghika</i>	126
<i>Dīpa</i>	25
<i>Dīpaṅkarā</i>	5.9,24
<i>Disciples</i>	58,71,72,93, 98,99,102, 109,115,123, 169,180,183, 220,233,267
<i>Discipline</i>	112,219,221, 223
<i>Discourse</i>	111,120,219, 221,223,234, 246,249,251, 260,277
<i>Discourses of protection</i>	241
<i>Deshonour</i>	270
<i>Dissolving element</i>	299
<i>Distraction of mind</i>	288
<i>Distress of mind</i>	56
<i>Doctrinal Order</i>	224
<i>Doctrine</i>	94,109,111, 191,228,235, 240
<i>Doṇa</i>	111,115
<i>Donation</i>	203,204,216, 218,248,276
<i>Donee</i>	214,276

<i>Donor</i>	213
<i>Dosa</i>	228,294
<i>Doubt</i>	288
<i>Dubbhikkhantara Kappa</i>	122
<i>Ducarita</i>	188
<i>Dukkha</i>	270
<i>Dullabhā saddhasampatti</i>	85
<i>Dhamma</i>	49,76,85,86, 93,97,100, 101,111,132, 140,240,241, 249,269,295, 304
<i>Dhamma assemblies</i>	95
<i>Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta</i>	51,183
<i>Dhammacariyāca</i>	261,266
<i>Dhammadāna</i>	204
<i>Dhammadesanā</i>	191
<i>Dhammakkhandhās</i>	116
<i>Dhammamāpujemi</i>	119
<i>Dhammapāla</i>	150,151
<i>Dhammasavana</i>	191
<i>Dhammācariya</i>	236
<i>Dhanapariccāga</i>	22
<i>Dhanañjara river</i>	80
<i>Dhāraṇa</i>	159

## E

<i>Effort</i>	14,19,125, 289,292
<i>Ehibhikkhu</i>	64
<i>Ehipassiko</i>	178
Eight Glorious Victories	93
Eight Moral Precepts	152,164
Eight Inopportune Times	123
<i>Ekaggatā</i>	287
<i>Element of Cohesion</i>	296
<i>Element of Extension</i>	296
<i>Element of Kynetic Energy</i>	296
<i>Element of Motion</i>	296
<i>Enlightened One</i>	177,306
<i>Envy</i>	187,294
<i>Equanimity</i>	19,195,238, 289
<i>Etadagga</i>	64
<i>Evil Māra</i>	31,32,37,45, 93,103
<i>Exalted One</i>	42,88,140, 153,178,180

## F

Faculty of Vitality	287
Faculty of Wisdom	291
Falsehood	143,147,149
Fame	270





Five Kinds of Duty for Sons and Daughters	251
Five Kinds of Duty for a Teacher	253
Five Kinds of Duty for a Wife	254
Five Kind of Losses	123
Five Mutable Elements	298,299
Five Precepts	97
Five Rare Occasions	84
Five Sensitive Elements	297
Flying Wheel of Treasure	32
Formless Sphere	282
Form Sphere	281
Four Characteristic Element	299
Four Essential Elements	296
Four Factors of Endowments	277
Four Foundations of Mindfulness	98,102
Four Material Requisites	203,235
Four Miserable Realms	2,209,229
Four Nether Worlds	122
Four Noble Truths	39,48,51,61, 96,235,269, 270,293
Four Sublime States	195,238,249
Four Types of Honouring	276
Fruition	126

Fruition Consciousness	173,178,270, 284
Full Enlightenment	4,39,106
Future Buddha	24

## G

<i>Gaim</i>	270
<i>Gativipatti</i>	124
<i>Gāmaṇi</i>	243
<i>Gāravoca</i>	211,267
<i>Gaṇḍha</i>	159
<i>Gandhāramana</i>	297
<i>Gandhakuṭi</i>	79
<i>Gandhodakiya</i>	209
<i>Gaṅgāmāla</i>	167
<i>Gehassita Pema</i>	196
<i>Generosity</i>	265
<i>Ghatikāra</i>	33
<i>Ghāna pasāda</i>	297
<i>Gijjhakuṭa</i>	92,94
<i>Girimekkhalā</i>	38
<i>Gīta</i>	159
<i>Glory</i>	206,207,208
<i>Good-will</i>	232
<i>Gosaka</i>	88
<i>Gotama</i>	28,56,63,114, 146,209,306

## 336      The Teachings of the Buddha

Great Council	220,239
Greed	49,56,91,123, 187,196,270, 28,288,295
Grief	56

### H

<i>Hadaya Rūpa</i>	298
<i>Hatred</i>	123,126,187, 196,270,288, 294,295
<i>Hatthi</i>	105
<i>Hemavata</i>	182,183,184
<i>Himavanta</i>	149
<i>Heretic</i>	42,61,93
<i>Hermit</i>	126
<i>Hīri</i>	289,295

### I

Iddhipāda	103
Ignorance	49,56,91,123, 220,270,282, 288,292,296
Ill-will	189,190,294
Immorality	96,111
Immortal Egoism	91
Impermanance	101
Inanimate	121

Initial application	287
Initial Arising Element	299
Insight Meditation	3,34
Isigili	101
Isipatana	216,218
Issā	288,294
Itthibhāva Rūpa	297

## J

<i>Janapadakalyāṇī</i>	75,76,78
<i>Jaratā Rūpa</i>	299
<i>Jambu</i>	105
<i>Jatila</i>	88
<i>Jālī</i>	10
<i>Jātaka</i>	71,243
<i>Jātissara</i>	18
<i>Jealousy</i>	92,187,288, 294
<i>Jetavana</i>	79,81,82,90, 100,128,259, 262,263
<i>Jeṭṭhohamāsami Lokassa</i>	27
<i>Jhānic Ecstasy</i>	33,35,39
<i>Jhāna</i>	35,112,113, 285
<i>Jivhāpasāda</i>	297
<i>Jīvitindriya</i>	287
<i>Jīvitapariccāga</i>	22

*Jīvita Rūpa* 298

**K**

<i>Kabalīkāra ahāra</i>	298
<i>Kaṇṇājina</i>	10
<i>Kakuda river</i>	107
<i>Kalyāna mitta sampadā</i>	278.279.280
<i>Kamma</i>	85.130.184
<i>Kammaññātā</i>	298
<i>Kamma and its results</i>	217.292.295. 294.199.308
<i>Kammaniyāma</i>	188.99
<i>Kammassakatā</i>	185
<i>Kammic actions</i>	187
<i>Kandaka</i>	31.33.36
<i>Kaṇṇamunda</i>	148
<i>Kapilavatthu</i>	88
<i>Kappa</i>	120.122
<i>Karuṇā</i>	195.291
<i>Kassapa Buddha</i>	59.147
<i>Kataññutā</i>	261.268
<i>Kathina robe</i>	248
<i>Kākavanatissa</i>	243
<i>Kāla</i>	24
<i>Kāladāna</i>	213.214
<i>Kāladevīla</i>	69
<i>Kālavipatī</i>	124
<i>Kālāsoka</i>	222

<i>Kāḷasilā</i>	101
<i>Kālenadhammasākiṇṇā</i>	261,269
<i>Kālena dhammasāvanam</i>	261,268
<i>Kālī</i>	182,184
<i>Kāludāyī</i>	66,67
<i>Kāmasobhana citta</i>	282
<i>Kāmavacara citta</i>	282
<i>Kāmesumicchā cāra</i>	158,188
<i>Kāsi</i>	150
<i>Kāyakamma</i>	121,185
<i>Kāyalahutā</i>	289
<i>Kāyakammaññāta</i>	290
<i>Kāyamudutā</i>	289
<i>Kāyapasāda</i>	297
<i>Kāyapassaddhi</i>	289
<i>Kāyapāguṇṇātā</i>	290
<i>Kāyavandanā</i>	118
<i>Kāyaviññatti</i>	298
<i>Kāyujukatā</i>	290
<i>Khantīca</i>	261,268
<i>Khatthiya</i>	25
<i>Khemam</i>	262,271
<i>Kimila</i>	78,147
<i>King Mahāsutasoma</i>	16
<i>King Podisāra</i>	16
<i>King Vessantrā</i>	10,24
<i>Kisāgotamī</i>	78
<i>Koḷita</i>	61,62



<i>Koḷira</i>	277
<i>Koṇḍañña</i>	28,51,100
<i>Kosala</i>	88
<i>Koṭi</i>	96
<i>Kukkucca</i>	288
<i>Kula</i>	25
<i>Kusalakamma</i>	187
<i>Kusināra</i>	106,107,109, 113,115
<i>Kutāgārasālā</i>	89
<i>Kutālikārāma</i>	90

## L

<i>Lahutā</i>	298
<i>Lābha</i>	270
<i>Lake Anotatta</i>	47
<i>Lamentation</i>	56
<i>Laṅkādīpa</i>	243
<i>Law of Cause and Effect</i>	39
<i>Libation water</i>	120
<i>Licchavi</i>	98
<i>Limiting Element</i>	298
<i>Lobha</i>	288,293
<i>Lokaṇīti</i>	244
<i>Lokatthacariyā</i>	21
<i>Lokavidū</i>	175,176
<i>Lokiya Ratanā</i>	121
<i>Lokuttara Citta</i>	284

<i>Lomahamsa</i>	19
<i>Loss</i>	270
<i>Loving-Kindness</i>	2,3,18,19,92, 93,160,164, 165,191,195, 196,197,232, 257,288,289, 295,307
<i>Lumbini Park</i>	26,27
<i>Lust</i>	56,126,137, 196

## M

<i>Macchariya</i>	228,294
<i>Maddidevī</i>	10,11
<i>Magga</i>	121,125,136, 178,180,205, 207,208,237, 240
<i>Mahābhuta rūpa</i>	296
<i>Mahādhammapāla</i>	78
<i>Mahādhammarakkhita</i>	223
<i>Mahā Era</i>	28,51
<i>Mahājanakka</i>	14
<i>Mahā Kassapa</i>	113,115,116, 221,226,239
<i>Mahākiriya citta</i>	283

<i>Mahākusala citta</i>	283
<i>Mahāmāyādevī</i>	25,28
<i>Mahāmoggaliputta tissa</i>	116,222
<i>Mahāmoggallāna</i>	64,73,101, 210,217
<i>Mahānāma</i>	36,52
<i>Mahāpadesa</i>	105
<i>Mahāpajāpati Gotamī</i>	29,73,78,100
<i>Mahāparinibbāna</i>	91,93,94,95, 105,109,112, 170,183,220
<i>Mahāpatthāna</i>	44
<i>Mahāsayana</i>	160
<i>Mahāsubhaddā</i>	79
<i>Mahāsudassana sutta</i>	110
<i>Mahāthera</i>	116,210
<i>Mahā vipāka citta</i>	283
<i>Mahosadha</i>	13
<i>Majjhattatā</i>	289
<i>Majjhima-desa</i>	25,183
<i>Malaya</i>	223
<i>Mallā prince</i>	107,114
<i>Manasikāra</i>	287
<i>Manokamma</i>	121,185
<i>Manovandanā</i>	118
<i>Manussatta bhavo dullabho</i>	85
<i>Maṇḍana</i>	159
<i>Maṇimekhalā</i>	14

<i>Maṅgala</i>	86,258
<i>Maṅgala sutta</i>	244,258,271
<i>Masculine sex element</i>	297
<i>Matter</i>	281
<i>Magadhaa</i>	95
<i>Mālā</i>	159
<i>Māna</i>	288
<i>Mātāpītuupathānam</i>	261,265
<i>Mātu āyupariccheda</i>	25
<i>Māyā</i>	293
<i>Meanness</i>	294
<i>Meṇḍaka</i>	80
<i>Meditation</i>	2,49,77,85, 160,169,190, 201,203,
<i>Mental concomitant</i>	281,286
<i>Mental politeness</i>	302,307
<i>Merit</i>	206,207,208, 308
<i>Meritorious deeds</i>	13
<i>Methuna</i>	157
<i>Mettā</i>	18,195,307
<i>Mettā Bhāvanā</i>	196
<i>Mettāsaḥagatena cetasā</i>	165
<i>Mettā sutta</i>	193
<i>Micchāditthi</i>	189,294
<i>Middha</i>	288
<i>Migadāya</i>	36,51

<i>Migāra</i>	80,81
<i>Migāramātā</i>	81
<i>Mijjapānacasamyāmo</i>	261,267
<i>Mind and matter</i>	293,295
<i>Mindfulness</i>	3,39,99,112, 140,145,157, 181,223,289
<i>Mirror of dhamma</i>	97
<i>Misbelief</i>	288
<i>Misery</i>	270
<i>Missionary period</i>	89
<i>Missionary works</i>	227,250
<i>Moha</i>	292,293
<i>Mokkhaligosāla</i>	109
<i>Moral culture</i>	302
<i>Moral dread</i>	145,289,295
<i>Morality</i>	2,9,11,12,95, 105,125,148, 149,165,167, 170,172,220, 203,208,237
<i>Moral shame</i>	145,285,295
<i>Mucalinda sattāha</i>	45,46
<i>Muditā</i>	195,291
<i>Mudutā</i>	298
<i>Muñcacetanā</i>	205
<i>Mundane</i>	121,299
<i>Musāvāda</i>	118

*Muttomoceyyam* 8,48

## N

*Nacca* 158  
*Namobuddhassa* 138  
*Namotassa* 120  
*Nandavana* 169  
*Nandiya* 216,217  
*Nandopananda* 91  
*Navaka nipāta* 164  
*Nālāgīri* 92  
*Nāḷaka* 100,210  
*Nāḷanda* 95  
*Nāḷikārāma* 89  
*Nāma* 300  
*Nāḷika* 97  
*Ñātakānañca saṅgaho* 261,266  
*Ñatattha cariyā* 21  
*Ñati byasana* 125  
*Ñayappatipanno* 179  
*Nerañjarā river* 45  
*Nevasañña nāsañña yatana thāna* 113  
*Nibbāna* 46,65,121,  
 125,126,129,  
 173,178,180,  
 205,206,207,  
 208,237,240,  
 245,270,281,  
 293,301



<i>Nibbānasacchikiriya</i>	261,270
<i>Nigaṇṭha</i>	80
<i>Niggardliness</i>	294
<i>Nigrodhārāma monastery</i>	67
<i>Nigrodhārāma</i>	90
<i>Nine Sabbath Precepts</i>	160,165
<i>Nine Supramundane Dhammas</i>	201
<i>Nipphanna rūpa</i>	299
<i>Niraya</i>	59,122,123, 136,228
<i>Nisabha</i>	137
<i>Nivāto</i>	261,287
<i>Noble Eightfold Path</i>	110
<i>Noble Person</i>	238
<i>Noble Practice</i>	40
<i>Non-returners</i>	71,78,112, 125,231
<i>Nutriment</i>	299
<i>Nutritious element</i>	297

O

<i>Odorous Element</i>	297
<i>Okāsa</i>	119,120,121, 130
<i>Okāsa Loka</i>	177
<i>Omen</i>	29
<i>Omniscience</i>	23,39,40,42, 48,88

Once-returner	71,73,125, 231
One-Heart Element	297
One-pointedness of Mind	287
Opaneyyiko	178
Ordination	52
Ottappa	289,295

## P

<i>Pabbajjitabhavodullabho</i>	85
<i>Paccantarika</i>	123
<i>Paccataṃ Veditabbo Viññuhi</i>	178
<i>Padumuttra Buddha</i>	209,210
<i>Pakkusa</i>	107
<i>Panlaṅka sattāha</i>	43
<i>Paṇḍitānañca sevanā</i>	260,263
<i>Pañcadīpaka Thera</i>	211
<i>Pañca Verani</i>	124
<i>Pañcapaṭiṭṭhita</i>	3
<i>Paññindriya</i>	291
<i>Paramattha</i>	281
<i>Paramattha pāramī</i>	20
<i>Parābhava sutta</i>	87,271
<i>Parittas</i>	127
<i>Pariccheda rūpa</i>	298
<i>Particular-6-</i>	287
<i>Pasanna</i>	270
<i>Pasāda rūpa</i>	297

<i>Path</i>	111,125,129
<i>Pathavī</i>	296
<i>Path-consciousness</i>	173,178,182, 270,284,293
<i>Patience</i>	15,93
<i>Patirūpadesavāsoca</i>	260,264
<i>Pattānumodana</i>	191
<i>Pattidāna</i>	191
<i>Payoga Vipatti</i>	125
<i>Pāhuneyyo</i>	179
<i>Pāli Texts</i>	224,225,234, 235,239
<i>Pānātipāta</i>	188
<i>Pāramī</i>	20
<i>Pātali</i>	95,170
<i>Pātaliputta</i>	222
<i>Pāvā</i>	105,107,113
<i>Pāvārika</i>	95
<i>Pesavatī</i>	210
<i>Penetrative knowledge</i>	96
<i>People's assembly</i>	109
<i>Perception</i>	287
<i>Peta</i>	59,122,123, 146,200
<i>Petavathu</i>	202
<i>Peyyavajja</i>	277
<i>Phala</i>	122,126,136, 178,180,205,

	207,208,217, 240
<i>Phalasamāpatti</i>	43,45,46,83
<i>Pharusavācā</i>	188
<i>Phassa</i>	287
<i>Phothabbāramana</i>	297
<i>Physical aggregate</i>	300
<i>Pisunavācā</i>	188
<i>Piṭaka</i>	183
<i>Pīti</i>	283
<i>Pokkharavassa rain</i>	71
<i>Polite manners</i>	302
<i>Praise</i>	270
<i>Precepts</i>	11,267
<i>Pretension</i>	294
<i>Prince Alīnasattu</i>	11
<i>Prince Ayoghara</i>	12
<i>Prince Nanda</i>	75,77
<i>Prince Siddhattha</i>	24
<i>Psychic Power</i>	92,103
<i>Pubba cetanā</i>	204
<i>Pubbārāma</i>	80,81,82,94
<i>Pubbecakatapuññatā</i>	260,264
<i>Pubbenivāsanussatiñāṇa</i>	39
<i>Puññavaddhana</i>	80
<i>Puñña Lakkhaṇā</i>	79
<i>Pūjācapūjaneyānam</i>	260,264
<i>Pūraṇakassapa</i>	189

<i>Pumbhāva rūpa</i>	297
<i>Putthassa Lokadhamehi</i>	262,270
<i>Puttadārassasaṅgaho</i>	261,265
<i>Putta pariccāga</i>	22

## R

<i>Rain-retreat</i>	52
<i>Ramma</i>	29
<i>Rassaramana</i>	297
<i>Ratanā</i>	121,171
<i>Ratanāghara Sattāha</i>	44
<i>Rāhulā</i>	31,72,76,100
<i>Rājagaha</i>	101,106,138, 146,182,184, 210,221
<i>Rājāyatana Sattāha</i>	46
<i>Rebirth</i>	56,200
<i>Recluse</i>	18,30
<i>Religious task</i>	2
<i>Remorse</i>	288
<i>Renunciation</i>	12,31,75
<i>Resolution</i>	17,33,287
<i>Restlessness</i>	288
<i>Right Action</i>	290
<i>Right Livelihood</i>	290
<i>Right Speech</i>	290
<i>Rogantara Kappa</i>	122
<i>Roruva</i>	147

<i>Rootless Consciousness</i>	282
<i>Rucā</i>	147
<i>Rūpa</i>	281,300
<i>Rūpacārī</i>	101
<i>Rūpāramana</i>	297
<i>Rūpāvacara Citta</i>	283
<i>Rūpāvacarakiriya Citta</i>	284
<i>Rūpāvacarakusala Citta</i>	283
<i>Rūpāvacaravipāka Citta</i>	284
<i>Rūpekkhāndhā</i>	300

## S

<i>Sabbath</i>	150,247,266
<i>Sabbath day</i>	211
<i>Sabha dosa</i>	121
<i>Sabha kāmi</i>	221
<i>Sabhaññuta ñāṇa</i>	23,39,40,88
<i>Saccaka</i>	91
<i>Saddhā</i>	204,289,295
<i>Saddhā dāna</i>	213
<i>Saddhammassaranam dullabham</i>	85
<i>Saddhāramana</i>	297
<i>Sakka</i>	33,47,35,58, 149
<i>Sakkacca dāna</i>	213,214
<i>Sakyan princes</i>	68
<i>Sakyaśīha</i>	236



<i>Sal grove</i>	108,114
<i>Samānattatā</i>	277
<i>Sammāājīva</i>	290
<i>Sammājīvita sampadā</i>	278,280
<i>Sammākammanta</i>	290
<i>Sammānanañcadhassanam</i>	261,269
<i>Sammā sambuddho</i>	175,176
<i>Sammāvācā</i>	290
<i>Sampadā</i>	277,278
<i>Samphappalāpa</i>	188
<i>Samuti Saṃgha</i>	174
<i>Saṃgha</i>	52,58,64,65, 68,97,117, 119,129,132, 140,147,216, 222,226,295
<i>Saṃgha Assembly</i>	114
<i>Saṃgham Pujemi</i>	119
<i>Saṃsāra</i>	1,8,41,48,50, 95,96
<i>Saṅkhāra Loka</i>	177
<i>Saṅditthika</i>	178
<i>Saṅgaha</i>	276
<i>Saṅgalovāda Sutta</i>	244,251
<i>Saṅkhārakkhandhā</i>	300
<i>Santati</i>	299
<i>Saṅtuṭhica</i>	261,268
<i>Sañjaya</i>	61

<i>Sañña</i>	287
<i>Saññakhandhā</i>	300
<i>Sappurisa dāna</i>	213,218
<i>Saraṇagamana</i>	120,134,135, 137,229
<i>Saraṇāni</i>	230
<i>Sati</i>	295
<i>Satta Loka</i>	176
<i>Satthantara Kappa</i>	122
<i>Satthādeva manussānam</i>	175,177
<i>Sādhu</i>	201
<i>Sāketa</i>	169
<i>Sāmicippatipanno</i>	179
<i>Sāriputta</i>	64,70,73,76, 100,101,210
<i>Sāsanā</i>	80,219,222, 225,227,234, 245,250
<i>Sātāgīri</i>	182,183,184
<i>Sātheya</i>	294
<i>Sāvatthi</i>	80,100,137, 232,259,262
<i>Self-enlightened One</i>	153
<i>Senā</i>	36
<i>Sensation</i>	287,300
<i>Sensual pleasure</i>	12
<i>Sensurous sphere</i>	281
<i>Setaketu</i>	24,26

## 354      The Teachings of the Buddha

<i>Seṭṭhohamasamilokassa</i>	27
<i>Seven sense element</i>	297
<i>Sexual misconduct</i>	134,142,143, 156,157,163, 189,254,273, 275
<i>Shamelessness</i>	288,293
<i>Sharing merit</i>	3,4,60,120, 199
<i>Sickness</i>	200
<i>Sippaṇca</i>	260,265
<i>Sīla</i>	190,267
<i>Sīla byasana</i>	125
<i>Sīridhammāsoka</i>	222
<i>Singuttara hill</i>	47
<i>Six faults of location</i>	117
<i>Six hues</i>	68
<i>Sloth</i>	288
<i>Sobhaṇa cetasika</i>	289
<i>Social Duties</i>	251
<i>Sona Thera</i>	222
<i>Sotapasāda</i>	297
<i>Sottāpanni Cave</i>	221
<i>Sotāpatti</i>	80
<i>Sotapatti-fruition</i>	184,232
<i>Sotthiya</i>	37
<i>Sovacassatā</i>	261,269
<i>Space Element</i>	298

<i>State Saṃgha Mahānāyaka committee</i>	226
<i>Stream-winners</i>	55,57,62,71, 73,79,99,125, 129,140,147, 149,169,231
<i>Stinginess</i>	288,294
<i>Sub-commentary</i>	226,239
<i>Subhadda</i>	109,110,113, 221
<i>Subhāsitācayāvācā</i>	260,265
<i>Subha</i>	29
<i>Sublime consciousness</i>	282,283
<i>Sucarita</i>	189,272
<i>Suciparivāra</i>	167
<i>Sudattha</i>	79
<i>Suddhodana</i>	25,29,65,67, 69
<i>Suffering</i>	61
<i>Sugato</i>	175,176
<i>Sujāta</i>	36,37,106
<i>Sūjakā</i>	11
<i>Sukha</i>	270
<i>Sumanā</i>	79
<i>Sumaṅgala Buddha</i>	211
<i>Sumedha</i>	5,9,48
<i>Sumittā</i>	7
<i>Sundarī</i>	93

<i>Suppabuddha</i>	29
<i>Suppaṭipanna</i>	179
<i>Supramundane</i>	121,249,282
<i>Supramundane consciousness</i>	284,285
<i>Supreme Enlightenment</i>	10,41,219
<i>Super psychic power</i>	6
<i>Suramma</i>	29
<i>Sustained application</i>	287
<i>Suvaṇṇabhūmi</i>	222
<i>Suvaṇṇasāma</i>	19
<i>Svākkhāta</i>	178
<i>Sympathetic Joy</i>	195,238

## T

<i>Takkasīla</i>	150
<i>Tangible Element</i>	297
<i>Tapoca</i>	261,269
<i>Tapussa</i>	47
<i>Tatrāmajjhataṭṭa</i>	291
<i>Tathāgata</i>	23,97,100, 103,105
<i>Tāvatisa</i>	33,75,98,137, 144,169,217, 218,
<i>Taṇhāpema</i>	196
<i>Tejo</i>	296
<i>Temiya</i>	17
<i>Ten Perfections</i>	5,9,92,146,

	204,206,207, 208
<i>Thānā</i>	159
<i>Thina</i>	288
<i>Thirty-eight Blessings</i>	248,249,258, 271
<i>Theravāda Buddhism</i>	220,225,226
<i>Three Abstinenes</i>	290
<i>Three Disasters</i>	123
<i>Threefold Training</i>	95,96,97,98, 105,237
<i>Three Refuges</i>	57,134,135, 137,153,157, 164
<i>Thūpā</i>	115,116
<i>Tiṇṇotāreyyam</i>	8,48
<i>Tipiṭakadhara</i>	236
<i>Tirokuṭṭa Sutta</i>	60,202
<i>Tissa</i>	243
<i>Tisaraṇa</i>	137
<i>Torpor</i>	288
<i>Tranquillity</i>	3,269
<i>Triple Gems</i>	3,97,120,161, 175,201,203, 229,230,231, 242
<i>Truthfulness</i>	16,19
<i>Tusitā</i>	24,209



<i>Twin Miracles</i>	69
<i>Two illimitables</i>	291
<i>Two Sex Elements</i>	297

## U

<i>Uccāsayana</i>	160
<i>Udaka</i>	35,50
<i>Udayakumāra</i>	168
<i>Uddhacca</i>	288
<i>Ujuppatipanno</i>	179
<i>Ukkalā</i>	47
<i>Ultimate Reality</i>	281
<i>Unconditioned</i>	40
<i>Unconditioned Element</i>	299
<i>Universal Monarch</i>	28,29,32,75, 172
<i>Universal (7)</i>	287
<i>Unwholesome consciousness</i>	282
<i>Upacāra Rupa</i>	299
<i>Upadhi Vipatti</i>	125
<i>Upapāramī</i>	20
<i>Upatissa</i>	61,62
<i>Upādā Rūpa</i>	296
<i>Upāli</i>	88,221
<i>Upekkhā</i>	19,195,291
<i>Uposatha sīla</i>	158
<i>Uruvela Grove</i>	35
<i>Uttara Thera</i>	222

<i>Uṭṭhāna sampadā</i>	278,279
<i>Utu</i>	299

## V

<i>Vacīkamma</i>	121,185
<i>Vacīvandanā</i>	118
<i>Vaciviññatti</i>	298
<i>Vādita</i>	159
<i>Vajji</i>	222
<i>Vasala sutta</i>	274
<i>Vassa</i>	52
<i>Vālukārāma monastery</i>	221
<i>Vāyo</i>	296,297
<i>Vappa</i>	36.52
<i>Vaḷḷagāmani</i>	223
<i>Vebhāra</i>	221
<i>Vedanā</i>	287
<i>Vedanakkhandhā</i>	300
<i>Veḷuva</i>	98.99
<i>Veḷuvana</i>	90
<i>Veḷuvana monastery</i>	64,65
<i>Verbal politeness</i>	302,306
<i>Verse of victory</i>	41
<i>Vera</i>	121
<i>Vesālī</i>	96,97,104, 105,221,222
<i>Vessantarā</i>	71
<i>Veyyāvacca</i>	190

<i>Vibhūsana</i>	159
<i>Vicāra</i>	287
<i>Vīcīkicchā</i>	288
<i>Videharāja</i>	14
<i>Vijjācaraṇasampanno</i>	175,176
<i>Vijjians</i>	94
<i>Vikālabhojana</i>	158
<i>Vikāra rūpa</i>	298
<i>Vilepana</i>	139
<i>Vinaya</i>	183
<i>Vinayādhika</i>	236
<i>Vinayocasusikkhito</i>	260,265
<i>Viññānakkhandhā</i>	301
<i>Viññatti rūpa</i>	298
<i>Vipatti</i>	121,124
<i>Virajam</i>	262,270
<i>Viratīpāpā</i>	261,267
<i>Viriya</i>	287,292
<i>Visākhā</i>	78,80,81
<i>Visāla</i>	79
<i>Visible element</i>	297
<i>Visūka</i>	159,292
<i>Vissuddhimagga</i>	236
<i>Vitakka</i>	287
<i>Vital element</i>	298
<i>Volition</i>	204
<i>Volitional activities</i>	185

## W

Wisdom	2,13,95,99, 105,167,172, 181,206,223, 237,258,279
Wrong View	91,123,274, 294
Woeful Abode	144
Worlding	112

## Y

Yasa	52,222
Yassa	270
Yasodarā	29,32,72,74, 76,78
Yoga byasana	125
Yojana	50,67,89,211

